



Mastering Conversational Chinese

# CHINESE FOR BEGINNERS

- IMMERSE YOURSELF IN 34 PRACTICAL, REAL-LIFE SCENARIOS
- SPEED YOUR LEARNING WITH KEY SENTENCE PATTERNS
- STEER SAFELY AWAY FROM COMMON MISTAKES
- USE FASCINATING CULTURE & ETIQUETTE TIPS
- SAY IT RIGHT: 190 AUDIO FILES BY NATIVE SPEAKERS

Yi Ren &  
Xiayuan Liang



Dear Reader: In order to view all colored text and non-English text accurately, please ensure that the PUBLISHER DEFAULTS SETTING on your reading device is switched to **ON**. This will allow you to view all non-English characters and colored text in this book. —Tuttle Publishing

Mastering Conversational Chinese

# CHINESE FOR BEGINNERS

Yi Ren and Xiayuan Liang

TUTTLE Publishing  
Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

*To our families and our students*

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

Copyright © 2012 Yi Ren and Xiayuan Liang

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

All poems (except for those in Chapter 7 and Chapter 11) were translated into English by Gwen Qin and Morris Jordan.

Cover photos: (Front) ©[iStockphoto.com](http://iStockphoto.com)/CE Futch. (Back, top & 3rd  
©[iStockphoto.com](http://iStockphoto.com)/Huchen Lu; Zeynep Ogan. (2<sup>nd</sup> & bottom)  
©[Dreamstime.com](http://Dreamstime.com)/Christopher Rawlins; Meccasky.

Interior photos: ©[Dreamstime.com](http://Dreamstime.com)/ Marcelmooij (p32); Zhudifeng (54); Bbbar (72); Huating (78); Mishoo (99); Fang Chun Che (108); Keng Po Leung (120); 5dmarkii (128); Pedro Antonio Salaverria Calahorra (150); Zhongfei Li (154); Yewkeo (158); Xuying1975 (164). ©[iStockphoto.com](http://iStockphoto.com)/Anna Zielinska (p14); webphotographeer (22); Huchen Lu (23); Kyu Oh (24); RonTech2000 (33); Zhang Bo (86); Kamil Krawczyk (88); londoneye (96); Huchen Lu (98); Blend\_Images (106); Hou Yuxuan (152); Ben Hung (155); Peng Wu (162); Mary Catherine Brinkworth (165); Shelly Au (174).

## Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Ren, Yi

Chinese for beginners : mastering conversational Chinese / Yi Ren, Xiayuan Liang. --  
1st ed.

p. cm.

Text in English and Chinese.

Includes index.

"All poems (except for those in Chapter 7 and Chapter 11) were translated into English by Gwen Qin and Morris Jordan"--T.p. verso.

ISBN: 978-1-4629-1476-0 (ebook)

1. Chinese language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*

2. Chinese language--Conversation and phrase books--English.  
3. Chinese language--Spoken Chinese. I. Liang, Xiayuan. II. Title.  
PL1129.E5R46 2012  
495.1'82421--dc23

2012005192

First edition

15 14 13 12      5 4 3 2 1      1207MP

Printed in Singapore

### **Distributed by**

#### **North America, Latin America & Europe**

Tuttle Publishing

364 Innovation Drive, North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.

Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930; Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993

info@tuttlepublishing.com

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

#### **Asia Pacific**

Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.

61 Tai Seng Avenue #02-12, Singapore 534167

Tel: (65) 6280-1330; Fax: (65) 6280-6290

inquiries@periplus.com.sg

[www.periplus.com](http://www.periplus.com)

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

### **The Tuttle Story: "Books to Span the East and West"**

Most people are surprised to learn that the world's largest publisher of books on Asia had its humble beginnings in the tiny American state of Vermont. The company's founder, Charles E. Tuttle, belonged to a New England family steeped in publishing.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

And his first love was naturally books—especially old and rare editions.

Immediately after WW II, serving in Tokyo under General Douglas MacArthur, Tuttle was tasked with reviving the Japanese publishing industry. He later founded the Charles E. Tuttle Publishing Company, which thrives today as one of the world's leading independent publishers.

Though a westerner, Tuttle was hugely instrumental in bringing a knowledge of Japan and Asia to a world hungry for information about the East. By the time of his death in 1993, Tuttle had published over 6,000 books on Asian culture, history and art—a legacy honored by the Japanese emperor with the “Order of the Sacred Treasure,” the highest tribute Japan can bestow upon a non-Japanese.

With a backlist of 1,500 titles, Tuttle Publishing is more active today than at any time in its past—inspired by Charles Tuttle's core mission to publish fine books to span the East and West and provide a greater understanding of each.



# Contents 目录

Preface and Acknowledgments

4

## 第一部分: 拼音 Part One: Pinyin

Unit 1 Initials 声母

Unit 2 Finals 韵母

Unit 3 Tones 声调

## 第二部分: 日常用语 Part Two: Daily Communication

第一章 问候  
Chapter 1 Greetings



第二章	介绍
Chapter 2	Introducing
第三章	聚会
Chapter 3	Getting Together
第四章	道歉
Chapter 4	How to Apologize
第五章	感谢
Chapter 5	Saying Thanks
第六章	天气
Chapter 6	Weather
第七章	数字
Chapter 7	Numbers
第八章	时间和日期
Chapter 8	Time and Date
第九章	打电话
Chapter 9	Making a Phone Call
第十章	在餐馆
Chapter 10	In a Restaurant

第十一章 Chapter 11	茶 馆 Tea House
第十二章 Chapter 12	去 哪 里 Where to Go
第十三章 Chapter 13	逛 风 景 Sightseeing
第十四章 Chapter 14	在 银 行 At the Bank
第十五章 Chapter 15	购 物 Shopping
第十六章 Chapter 16	交 通 Transportation

[Answer Key 答案](#)

[Glossary 词汇总表](#)



[Audio File List](#)

Appendix 1: [Mandarin Chinese Pinyin](#)



## Appendix 2: Three Chinese Folk Songs



## How to Download the Disc Content of this Book.

1. You must have an internet connection.
2. Click the link below or copy paste the URL to your web browser.  
<http://www.tuttlepublishing.com/fetchapp-download/cd4842358>

3. Check if the title is correct and click "ADD TO CART".
4. Make sure that the "Order Subtotal" at the top of "Proceed to Checkout" is \$0.00. If not, please email us at [info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com). If Checkout shows \$0.00, please proceed to checkout.

5. Secure Checkout (*Billing Details*): Please complete the Billing Details and click the "BILL & SHIP TO THIS ADDRESS".

6. Secure Checkout (*Shipping Details*): Click "modify" if your shipping address is different from your billing address and click "SHIP TO THIS ADDRESS".

7. Secure Checkout (*Shipping Method*): Please tick "Free Shipping \$0.00" and click "CONTINUE".

8. Secure Checkout (*Order Confirmation*): Check the cart

items and make sure that the Grand Total is \$0.00 and "CONTINUE". If the item total is not zero, please email us at [info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com).

9. Thereafter, an e-mail confirmation will be sent to you. It contains a link for you to download the file(s).

For support email us at [info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com).

# Preface and Acknowledgments

It was a beautiful sunny Saturday in the fall of 2008. In my adult Chinese class, right after I had finished answering questions, one of the students loudly said: “You should write a textbook for us!” This statement was immediately supported by others: “Yes! You should!” I was shocked, stood there looking at them, and didn’t know what to say. After a while I managed to tell them, “Thank you for trusting me! But I don’t think I can do it. I’m not a professor!”

But, some students still kept encouraging me after classes or at other times we met. I’ll never ever forget that in the spring of 2009, when I presented my first draft to them in order to get their opinions and feedback, they all were quite excited about it, and very seriously wrote down their comments and suggestions.

And today, here it is: *Chinese for Beginners*. At the moment of wrapping up my final version, the first thing I want to say is to my former students, Rosy McDonough, Karin Davidson, Rick Blasingim, Robin Ricketts, Brian Brieske, Beth Buonanno, and Kelly Beyer, from the bottom of my heart: “Thank you all so much for your persistent encouragement and support!” With deep appreciation to my students, I would like to remind them: this book is for you and for all others who are eager to learn Chinese language and culture.

I was very lucky to meet senior editor Sandra Korinchak at Tuttle Publishing. I deeply appreciated her patience and recognition of the potential of my draft. As we worked together, she provided a lot of thoughts, advice, and suggestions for the project, which have played an important role in the improvement of this book. I truly thank her for her time, thoughtfulness, and professionalism.

In the past two years, many people provided support for this project in different aspects. Many thanks to: Fengliang Zong who created the original layout concept at the early stage. Thanks to professor Chaofen Sun of Stanford University, who read my first rough draft and provided a number of constructive suggestion with warm encouragement; my colleagues and friends Gwen Qin, Jiansheng Lu, Xiaoyan Li, and Jie Ding, who provided whatever help I needed; Gwen Qin and her husband Morris Jordan did a magnificent job in translating the Tang poems and the Chinese folk songs into English for the book. Thanks to Haiou Wu, Guangxin Li, Xiuping Wang, Xuezhong Wang, Eleanor McNees, Sharon Scott, Jeanmarie Lerner, Paul Ramsey and Bruce Peters, who help me solve computer problems and read my preliminary draft and pointed out errors. My special thanks goes to Ron Enos, for his spending a lot of time on the audio recording. My relatives in China also made a lot of contributions, especially Lin Wang, Peng Xu and Lining Liu: for helping with the glossary, audio recording and corrections of some pinyin tones, thank you so much!

I was blessed to have as very close friends Mika Farer and Xiayuan Liang. They have always been by my side during the entire process of book writing and helped me pass through hard

times. Xiayuan Liang then became my partner, and together we have accomplished the book. I am deeply grateful for their invaluable friendship, optimistic attitudes and advice!

Last but not least, I would like to express my appreciation to my mother in China, who told me lots of things about Chinese culture and customs; and to my husband Suisheng Zhao and our children Lillian, Sandra and Justin; they support me in so many different ways with their love and care. My deepest thanks to them!

Yi Ren





*To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).*

An ancient Chinese philosopher, Lao Zi, said: “A journey of a thousand miles starts with one single step.”

So, now that you have this book open, what next? What is that first single step in learning Chinese? It’s learning pinyin!

Pinyin is a Romanized spelling system. When we learn English, we start with A, B, and C; and in learning Chinese, we start with pinyin. Did you know that Chinese children begin learning pinyin before they start to learn Chinese characters? It’s used like the phonetic symbol system is used in English: it shows how to pronounce things. And most of the pronunciations are similar to those of English letters.

When you become familiar with pinyin, you will feel like you  
"\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*"

have a strong pair of wings and are able to fly freely among Chinese characters, just the way native Chinese speakers do in speaking, reading, and writing this language.

Okay, let's start to learn pinyin. First of all, you need to know that pinyin is composed of three elements: initials, finals, and tones. What are initials? Take a look at the chart below, and turn on your audio. Follow along with me and read the initials out loud.

# Unit 1 Consonants/Initials 第一单元—声母

There are 23 initials in Chinese.



<b>b</b>	<b>p</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>
<b>d</b>	<b>t</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>l</b>
<b>g</b>	<b>k</b>	<b>h</b>	
<b>j</b>	<b>q</b>	<b>x</b>	
<b>z</b>	<b>c</b>	<b>s</b>	
<b>zh</b>	<b>ch</b>	<b>sh</b>	<b>r</b>
<b>y</b>	<b>w</b>		

The sound of some initials is similar to that of English letters:

**b** like “b” in **ball**    **p** like “p” in **push**    **m** like “m” in **mine**    **f** like “f” in **far**

**d** like “d” in **day**    **t** like “t” in **tea**    **n** like “n” in **name**    **l** like “l” in **look**

**g** like “g” in **girl**    **k** like “k” in **kind**    **h** like “h” in **hot**

**j** like “j” in **just**    **q** like “ch” in **cheese**    **x** like “sh” in **sheep**

**z** like “ds” in **reads**    **c** like “ts” in **sits**    **s** like “s” in **silk**

**zh** like “dge” in    **ch** like “ch” in    **sh** like “sh” in    **r** like “r” in

**judge**

y like “y” in  
yellow

**rich**

w like “w” in  
way

**shop**

**rubber**

When you read, you will find that the letters **Z, C, S, Zh, Ch, Sh, R, and X** are not quite as easy to pronounce. This is because there are no sounds exactly like them in English. Don’t worry about it, because correct sounds will come to you with more practice. Let’s repeat them one more time, as you play the recording again.

See, you sound better already.

Now we move onto **Unit 2: Vowels/Finals**. Listen to the audio of vowels/finals, and repeat the sounds you hear as you read the table.

## Unit 2 Vowels/Finals 第二单元—韵母



<b>a</b>	<b>o</b>	<b>e</b>
<b>i</b>	<b>u</b>	<b>ü</b>

**a** like “a” in **spa**      **o** like “o” in **voice**      **e** like “ear” in **earn**  
**i**: a long e sound, like “ee” in **feet**      **u** like “oo” in **boom**      **ü** like “u” in French **tu** or “ü” in German **Führer**.

Finals are much easier, right? These six are the basic and most common finals.

Since you have learned “Initials” and “Finals” now, I’ll tell you some encouraging facts: most Chinese words are pronounced by combining initials and finals. Look at these three simple Chinese words:

I — **wǒ**

You — **nǐ**

He — **tā**

You can see that when the initial “**w**” and the final “**o**” combine, they form a Chinese word “**wǒ**” which means “I” in English. The words **nǐ** (you) and **tā** (he) follow the same rule. Not difficult, right?

But, you may be wondering what that extra stuff is on top of the “**o**”, “**i**” and “**a**”? Good question! These mark the “tones” in Chinese. Since you asked, we’ll learn tones now.

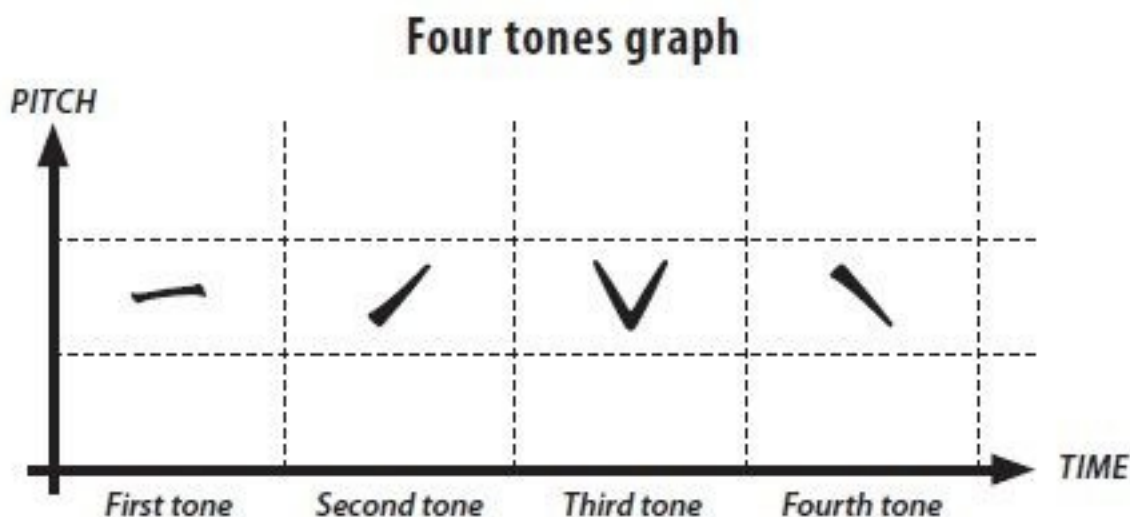
Tones are sounds that happen when you move your voice in different ways as you speak. There are four tones and one neutral tone in Chinese. Let's take a closer look.

## Unit 3 Tones 第三单元一声 调

Look at the table below. We'll use the word “**yu**” as an example. We'll discuss its meanings later.

Tone	Mark	Description
1st	yū	Flat or high level tone
2nd	yú	Starts medium in tone, then rises to the top
3rd	yǔ	Starts low, dips to the bottom, then rises toward the top
4th	yù	Starts at the top, then falls sharp and strong to the bottom
Neutral tone	yu	Flat, with no emphasis; it's shorter and lower in pitch than the 1st tone.

If we put the descriptions into a visual form—sketch them out—we get a graph like this:



Now, follow along with me: we are going to read **yu** with each of the four tones. You may use your fingertip to trace over the appropriate mark on the graph above, as you speak each one. Pay attention to how your finger and your voice move up and down to reach different “pitch” levels.



Tone	Mark	Meaning
1st	淤 yū	become silted up
2nd	鱼 yú	fish
3rd	雨 yǔ	rain
4th	玉 yù	jade
Neutral tone	yu	Not every Chinese character has a neutral tone. Many particle words have neutral tones, such as <b>ma</b> —吗, <b>ne</b> —呢, etc. You’ll see that in the next chapter.

Great work—now you know how tones are made and how  
 "\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*"



different they sound. And just as with **yu** above, remember that one character can have four different tones, and that same character pronounced with different tones can have different meanings. In Chinese, there are some characters that you don't have to pronounce with an exactly accurate tone (because there is not much risk of confusion); but for others, you have to pronounce their tones correctly. For example, the word **mai**: with third tone **mǎi** means "buy"; but with fourth tone **mài** means "sell"! What a big difference in their meanings! You don't want to get this wrong when you shop in China.

Okay! Now that you have learned what pinyin is all about, and you know the initials, finals, and tones, it's time to use them. You will see that you're able to speak Chinese sentences already. Listen to the audio and follow along with me to read some "Practice Pinyin." Nice and loud...

### Pīn yīn liàn xí



## Practice Pinyin 拼音练习

bā	bá	bǎ	bà	mā	má	mǎ	mà
gē	gé	gě	gè	jiē	jié	jiě	jiè
mēi	méi	měi	mèi	dī	dí	dǐ	dì
wō	wó	wǒ	wò	yōu	yóu	yǒu	yòu
hē	hé	hě	hè				

## Sentence 1

I have dad, mom, an older brother, an older sister, a younger sister, and a younger brother.

**Wǒ yǒu bà ba, mā ma, gē ge, jiě jie, mèi mei hé dì dì.**  
我有爸爸，妈妈，哥哥，姐姐，妹妹和弟弟。



Let's keep practicing:

shī	shí	shǐ	shì	mēi	méi	měi	mèi
guō	guó	guǒ	guò	rēn	rén	rěn	rèn
zāi	zái	zǎi	zài	xuē	xué	xuě	xuè
zhōng	zhóng	zhǒng	zhòng	wēn	wén	wěn	wèn

## Sentence 2

I'm American. I'm learning Chinese.

**Wǒ shì měi guó rén. Wǒ zài xué zhōng wén.**  
我是美国人。我在学中文。

Ho, ho! You have now spoken two very important sentences. Practice them with your friends and family. They'll be surprised with your progress in your first lesson. You're able to speak some real Chinese sentences! Not bad!

Now, take a break, and then we'll start a new chapter. There are a lot of interesting things ahead for you to learn.

Zhù shì

## Note 注释

The pinyin system has some rules which you need to know. I

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

don't want to go through them one by one here, because it would be too dry for you. Instead I will discuss these rules in the following chapters using examples, to make the pinyin rules easier for you to learn and to memorize.

Part Two

Dì èr bù fēn  
第二部分

# Daily Communication

Rì cháng yòng yǔ  
日常用语

# CHAPTER 1

## 第一章

Dì yī zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Greetings 问候 Wèn hòu

This is Jack's first time in Beijing. He is working in China as a

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

representative of an American company. Jack met Lily two years ago when she was a visiting scholar in the United States. Now Lily is a professor at a university in Beijing. They have not seen each other for two years. One Friday afternoon, Jack comes to Lily's house to visit her.

In this chapter, you will learn how to greet people in Chinese. You also will learn useful sentences, ways to extend your vocabulary (yes, already!), a saying by Confucius, idioms, a well-known Chinese poem, and interesting Chinese culture tips.

Let's start!

Turn on your audio and listen to the list at below right: **New Words 1**. Then follow along with me to read each word, and repeat it during the pause provided. Carefully pay attention to the tones.

Okay, are you ready to move on to **Dialog 1**? Listen to each sentence of the dialog as you read along. Then, join us as we repeat the dialog. You can practice as much as you want. It may take a few times before you start to feel comfortable with saying the dialog sentences!



Jack: Excuse me, is Lily home?

**Qǐng wèn, Lì lì zài jiā ma?**

请问, 丽丽在家吗?

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

Lily: Yes. Please come in!

**Zài, qǐng jìn!**

在, 请进!

Jack: Hello, Lily!

**Nǐ hǎo, Lì lì!**

你好, 丽丽!

Lily: Hello, Jack!

**Nǐ hǎo, Jié kè!**

你好, 杰克!

Jack: I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

**Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn, nǐ hǎo ma?**

好久不见, 你好吗?

Lily: I'm fine, how about you?

**Wǒ hěn hǎo, nǐ ne?**

我很好, 你呢?

Jack: I'm fine, too.

**Wǒ yě hěn hǎo.**

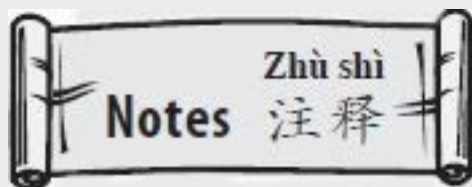
我也很好。



问候 wèn hòu	greeting
请 qǐng	please
问 wèn	ask
丽丽 Lì lì	Lily
在 zài	in
家 jiā	home
吗 ma	interrogative particle
进 jìn	come in
你 nǐ	you
好 hǎo	good
你好 nǐ hǎo	hello



杰克 Jié kè	Jack
好久 hǎo jiǔ	long time
不 bú	no, not
见 jiàn	see
我 wǒ	I
很 hěn	very
呢 ne	interrogative particle
也 yě	also



- ① You may notice that sometimes the definitions of words in the “New Words” list are slightly different from the words’ meanings as they’re translated in the dialog. For instance, the word 很好 **hěn hǎo** means “very good” in English, but it means “I am fine” in the context of the dialog. You’ll want to keep this fact—typical of most languages—in mind as you study the vocabulary.
- ② The word 吗 **ma** is a particle commonly used at the end of a sentence to convert the sentence into a yes/no question; it doesn’t need to be translated into English.
- ③ 呢 **Ne** is another particle that’s added at the end of the

sentence. It's frequently used to ask a question related to a conversation. Look at the dialog again. Jack asks Lily: “好久不见, 你好吗? **Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn, nǐ hǎo ma?**” Lily replies: “我很好, 你呢? **Wǒ hěn hǎo, nǐ ne?**” Here, 你呢 **nǐ ne** means “How are you (Jack) doing?”



Here are some short and easy sentences from the dialog that are used routinely in China. Practice them so that you'll be ready to use them whenever the right situation comes up.

**Qǐng jìn!**

请进! (Please come in!)

---

**Nǐ hǎo ma?**

你好吗? (How are you?)

---

**Wǒ hěn hǎo.**

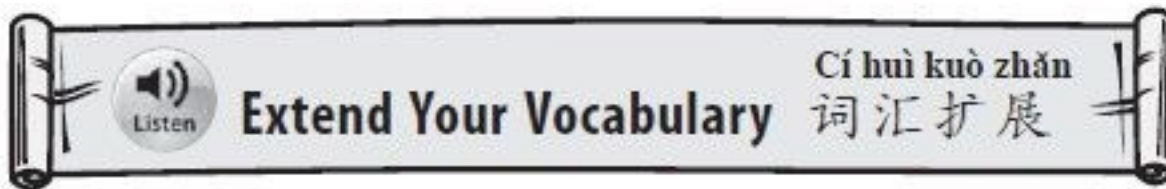
我很好。 (I'm fine.)

---

**Wǒ yě hěn hǎo.**

我也很好。 (I'm fine, too.)

---



In **Dialog 1**, Lily and Jack use the word 好 **hǎo** several times. When the word 好 **hǎo** is used in conjunction with other words, the intensity of the meaning changes. Here are three samples. Later, in the **Substitutions** section of **Practice and Review**, there are exercises to help you learn how to use these words.

<b>fēi cháng hǎo</b> 非常好 very good	<b>tài hǎo le</b> 太好了 wonderful	<b>hǎo jí le</b> 好极了 great
--	---------------------------------------	----------------------------------

You have learned how greetings work when people meet each other. But what are they supposed to say and to do next?

Listen to the audio for **New Words 2**, and then read them with me. As usual, you need to pay attention to the tone of each word. After finishing the new words, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*

along with me to repeat these sentences. When you feel satisfied with your performance, move on to **Notes**.



Lily: Please sit down! Have you had your meal yet?

**Qǐng zuò! Nǐ chī le ma?**

请坐! 你吃了吗?

Jack: Yes, I have.

**Wǒ chī le.**

我吃了。

Lily: Would you like to have some tea or coffee?

**Nǐ hē chá hái shì kā fēi?**

你喝茶还是咖啡?

Jack: I would like to have some tea.

**Wǒ hē chá.**

我喝茶。

Lily: Please enjoy your tea.

**Qǐng hē chá.**

请喝茶。

Jack: Thank you!

**Xiè xie!**

谢谢!

Lily: You're welcome.

**Bú kè qì.**

不客气。



坐 zuò

sit down

吃 chī

eat

吃了 chī le

ate

喝 hē

drink

茶 chá

tea

还是 hái shì

or

咖啡 kā fēi

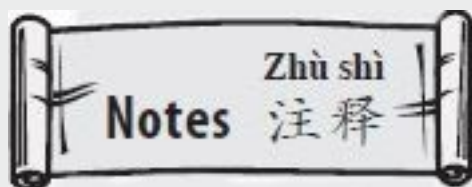
coffee

谢谢 xiè xie

thank you

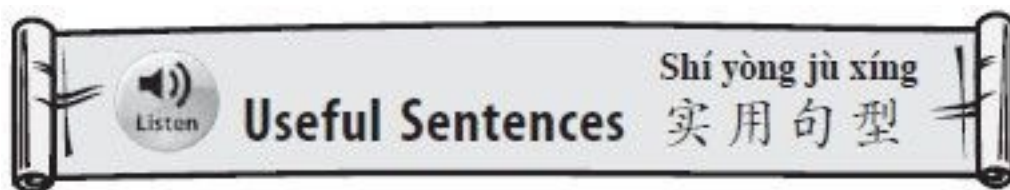
不客气 bú kè qì

you're welcome



① “Please,” a common polite word, is frequently used in English. And its Chinese synonym, 请 **qǐng**, is also quite often spoken by Chinese. 请 **Qǐng** is used in all polite requests in Chinese. Usually, a second verb follows the word 请 **qǐng**. As you see in the dialog, **zuò** and **hē** are verbs put after “**qǐng**”: 请坐 **qǐng zuò** (please sit down), 请喝 **qǐng hē** (please have a drink). You will learn more in **Extend Your Vocabulary**.

② Note that Chinese verbs don't have different tenses. Instead, other ancillary words are added together with the verb to express the different verb tense. For example, the verb “eat” equates to “吃 **chī**” which is the present tense, but “ate” would be “吃了 **chī le**” which is the past tense. You can see that 了 **le** is an ancillary word.



Here are key sentences from the dialog that you'll want to memorize. They will be especially useful in your daily conversations.

**Qǐng zuò!**

请 坐! (Please sit down!)

---

**Qǐng hē chá.**

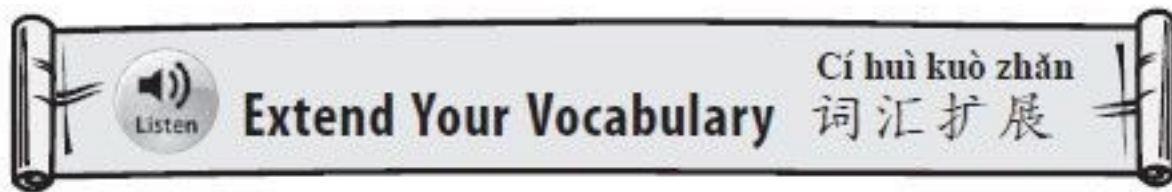
请 喝 茶。 (Please have some tea.)

---

**Nǐ chī le ma?**

你 吃 了 吗? (Have you had your meal yet?)

---



Here, we'll learn a few more phrases related to 请 **qǐng**, because 请 **qǐng** is a word that people use almost every day. You may want to practice these with your family, friends or colleagues.



<b>Qǐng kàn</b> 请看 Please look	<b>Qǐng tīng</b> 请听 Please listen
<b>Qǐng dú</b> 请读 Please read	<b>Qǐng shuō</b> 请说 Please speak



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

How do you use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**? I will show you here. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and (as we move further along) some words you will have learned in earlier chapters. Go ahead and give it a try!





Wǒ hěn hǎo.

1. 我 很 好。

Qǐng jìn!

2. 请 进!

Lì lì fēi cháng hǎo.

• 丽丽 非 常 好。

Jié kè hǎo jí le!

• 杰克 好 极了!

Nǐ tài hǎo le!

• 你 太 好了!

Qǐng kàn!

• 请 看!

Qǐng tīng!

• 请 听!

Qǐng dú!

• 请 读!

Qǐng shuō!

• 请 说!

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dá àn

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits with the sentence.

Nǐ hǎo ma?

1) 你 好 吗?

Qǐng

Wǒ hěn

Wǒ chī

Qǐng hē

jìn	hǎo	le	chá
A. 请进	B. 我很好	C. 我吃了	D. 请喝茶

**Xiè xie!**

2) 谢谢!

Kā fēi	Bú kè qì	Qǐng zuò	Qǐng kàn
A. 咖啡	B. 不客气	C. 请坐	D. 请看

**Xuǎn zé lián xiàn**

## **C. Connect the Sentences 选择连线**

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) Hello!

a) Qǐng jìn

2) Come in, please!

b) Bú kè qì

3) Thank you!

c) Nǐ hǎo

4) You're welcome.

d) Xiè xie

## D. Translate 翻译

Translate the following sentences into pinyin.

Example: Have you had your meal?——**Nǐ chī le  
ma?**

- 1) Please come in! \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Please sit down! \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) How are you? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) I'm fine, how about you? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Thank you! \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) You're welcome! \_\_\_\_\_

Check your answers in the **Answer Key** in the back of the book. How did you do? If your answers are perfect, fantastic! If you made some mistakes, that's perfectly normal. Just make sure that you understand why you were wrong before you continue to the next chapter. There, we'll be moving on to something even more fun...meeting new people.

## TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮

### “Have You Eaten?” Chinese Greeting Customs

In China, a handshake is a common greeting when people meet for the first time. At the same time, people will say “你好 **Nǐ hǎo**” (Hello, a normal form) or “您好 **Nín hǎo**” (Hello, a respectful form). Among Chinese, people normally also say to each other: “你吃了吗 **Nǐ chī le ma?**” (Have you had your meal yet?), especially when they meet around the time of breakfast, lunch, or dinner. Generally speaking, this is a polite formula rather than a literal offering of a meal.

Although embracing, hugging, or kissing on the cheek is a typical way of greeting in the west, most Chinese don't feel comfortable using these greeting forms when they meet (although some Chinese use these forms for people they know really well). It is safe to just shake hands, smile, and say hello as you greet people in China.

When people meet, they need to call each other something, right? Chinese like to use a title in order to show their respect. The title is usually put after the person's last name, such as 李 老师 **Lǐ lǎo shī** (Teacher Li), 吴主席 **Wú zhǔ xí** (Chairman Wu), or 刘经理 **Liú jīng lǐ** (Manager Liu). People also use, before their last names, 老 **lǎo** for people older than themselves or 小 **xiǎo** for people younger than themselves. For instance, for their colleague, friend, or neighbor named Li, people would

say “老李 **Lǎo Lǐ**” or “小李 **Xiǎo Lǐ**.”

In China and East Asia in particular, the exchange of business cards is very common protocol for people who meet for the first time at conferences, banquets or other relatively formal occasions. When you go to China, in order to leave a good impression, prepare a two-sided business card to take along that's printed with English on one side and Chinese on the other side. And to show your respect, use both hands to deliver or accept business cards.

## For Your Enjoyment

In Chinese culture, people frequently quote idioms, proverbs, sayings, and lines from poems in their conversations, speeches, and articles. Foreign visitors will often hear or read these when they are in China. Here are three related to this chapter's topic of greetings.



有朋自远方来，不亦乐乎 **Yǒu péng zì yuǎn fāng lái, bú yì lè hū** (a saying): It is a great pleasure to greet friends coming from faraway places. —*Kǒng Zǐ (Confucius)*

一见如故 **Yī jiàn rú gù** (an idiom): To feel like old friends upon meeting for the first time.

久仰大名 **jiǔ yǎng dà míng** (an idiom): I've heard your name for a long time. (Chinese often say this phrase when

they meet a famous person.)

Today many people like Jack come to China for travel, work, study or doing business. And of course sometimes they feel homesick. Here is a famous Chinese poem in which the poet, Li Bai, described his feeling of missing his hometown.

Li Bai, also called Li Po, lived from 701–762 and is a very well-known poet of the Tang Dynasty (618–907). He wrote over 900 poems in his life. Most of these poems are about life, scenery, his wishes and feelings. Li Bai and two other poets, Wang Wei and Du Fu, are considered the most famous poets of the “golden age” of Chinese poetry, that is, the Tang Dynasty. You’ll see more of their poems later.



## THOUGHTS FOR A QUIET NIGHT

by Li Bai

The bright beams shine  
across my coverlet,  
Reminding me of frost  
covering the ground.  
I gaze up at the bright moon,  
then bow my head,  
And suddenly think of home.

Jìng yè sī  
静夜思

Lǐ Bái  
李白

Chuáng	qián	míng	yuè	guāng,
床	前	明	月	光,
yí	shì	dì	shàng	shuāng.
疑	是	地	上	霜。
Jǔ	tóu	wàng	míng	yuè,
举	头	望	明	月,
dī	tóu	sī	gù	xiāng.
低	头	思	故	乡。

## Suggestions

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



There are many differences in cultures, habits, and lifestyles between China and Western countries. Sometimes, a small thing can trigger a lot of misunderstanding or embarrassment on either side or both sides. Here are a few suggestions that may help you keep misunderstandings to a minimum.

✍ When you are invited to your Chinese friend's home for a dinner, or a party or other event, according to Chinese custom, it is better not to come with empty hands. What should you bring? It really depends on the situation. For example, if you are invited for dinner, you can bring a bottle of wine, a box of chocolate, or flowers; if your friends have a newborn baby, a great present is baby formulas or baby foods made in the U.S. or other developed countries, since these are especially welcomed by many Chinese. On this subject, by the way: Unlike western women, Chinese women do not organize baby showers for future new moms. They celebrate a newborn baby after his or her arrival to the world. That is a good time to take the opportunity to buy baby formula or colorful clothes made in your country as a gift for your Chinese friend. He or she will deeply appreciate your thoughtful gift.

✍ Some Chinese are confused by the statements like "I'll call you" or "We will get together..." that are said frequently by Americans. To Americans, these statements are courtesies and may simply equal a "See you later." However, to many Chinese, these statements sound like a serious intention. Therefore, the Chinese person likely expects a call soon from his/her American friend...but to his/her surprise, the phone call never comes. Keeping this in mind, it may be a good idea



to use less-confusing statements with your Chinese friends and acquaintances, like “Take care and goodbye” or “Hope to see you again.”

## Do You Know?

Many learners are eager to build up their knowledge about China fast. These items will help you do exactly that! They are just for fun. All the answers are provided in the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

- ❶ Why is China called “中国 **zhōng guó**” and America called “美国 **měi guó**” in Chinese?
- ❷ What are the names of the eight ancient capitals of China?

## See you later!

You have made great progress. In this chapter, you’ve learned 41 new words and the basic Chinese greeting style, along with some useful sentences, idioms, and a bit on Chinese customs and culture.

After all that, you may feel like going out to get some fresh air. I need some too. When you come back, you will learn how to introduce your friends and family members to other people. I’ll see you later!

## CHAPTER 2

## 第二章

Dì èr zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Introducing... 介绍 Jiè shào

Lily's parents arrived back home while Jack and Lily were talking. Lily's husband picked up their daughter on his way home

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

from work, and they have just arrived too. Jack has never met Lily's family, so Lily introduces everyone to Jack.

In this chapter, you will learn how to introduce yourself when you meet someone for the first time and how to introduce your family members. Also, you will learn some Chinese family traditions. Plus, you'll discover Chinese idioms, a proverb, a famous poem, and more tips about Chinese culture and customs.

Are you curious? Great. Let's learn something new!

In Chapter 1, you learned how Jack and Lily greet each other in Chinese. Now, let's see how Lily introduces her family to Jack in Chinese. Once you know how to introduce and be introduced, you're on your way to meeting lots of new people.

It's time to turn on the audio, this time to Chapter 2's **New Words 1**. Listen to the complete list first, and then follow me to read and repeat each word. After you get familiar with these new words, you can move on to **Dialog 1**. Listen, and then repeat; practice each sentence until you can say it smoothly.



Lily: Jack, these are my dad and mom.  
**Jié kè, tā men shì wǒ de bà ba hé mā ma.**  
杰克, 他们是我的爸爸和妈妈。

Jack: How do you do!

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

**Nín men hǎo!**

您 们 好 ！

Lily: This is my friend.  
**Tā shì wǒ de péng yǒu.**  
他 是 我 的 朋 友。

Lily's dad (*to Jack*): What's your name?  
**Nǐ jiào shén me míng zi?**  
你 叫 什 么 名 字?

Jack: My name is Jack Lee.  
**Wǒ jiào Lǐ Jié kè.**  
我 叫 李 杰 克。

Lily's dad: Welcome!  
**Huān yíng nǐ!**  
欢 迎 你!

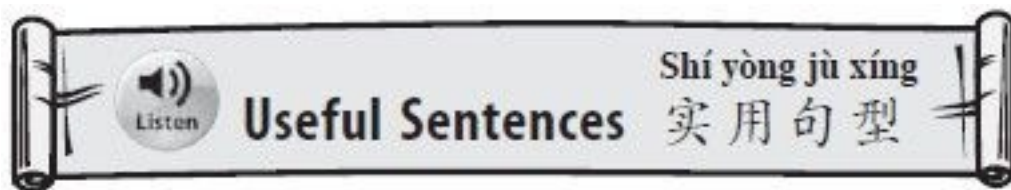




介绍 jiè shào	introduction
他们 tā men	they
是 shì	is/are/am
我的 wǒ de	my
爸爸 bà ba	dad
和 hé	and
妈妈 mā ma	mom
您 nín	you
您们 nín men	you (plural)
他 tā	he
朋友 péng yǒu	friend
叫 jiào	to be called
什么 shén me	what
名字 míng zi	name
李 Lǐ	Lee (name)
欢迎 huān yíng	welcome



- ① You may have noticed that both 你好 **nǐ hǎo** and 您好 **nín hǎo** are equivalent to “Hello” in English. What is the difference between 你好 **nǐ hǎo** and 您好 **nín hǎo**? How do you use them? 您好 **Nín hǎo** is a respectful form which is used to greet elderly people and people you meet for the first time, or to show respect and politeness in formal occasions. 你好 **Nǐ hǎo** is like “Hi” in English. People use this form in a casual manner.
- ② Similar to English, there are words for “these” and “this” in Chinese. However, the way of using them in Chinese is slightly different from the way it’s done in English. For example, in English you can say either “*This* is my friend” or “*He* is my friend”; but in Chinese, you usually use a personal pronoun “**tā**” rather than “this”—you say “**Tā shì wǒ de péng yǒu.**” Remember: people use a personal pronoun 他 **tā**/她 **tā** instead of “this” and 他们 **tā men** / 她们 **tā men** instead of “these” to introduce others in Chinese.



Once again, the dialog has some key sentences which are especially worth memorizing.

**Tā shì wǒ de péng yǒu.**

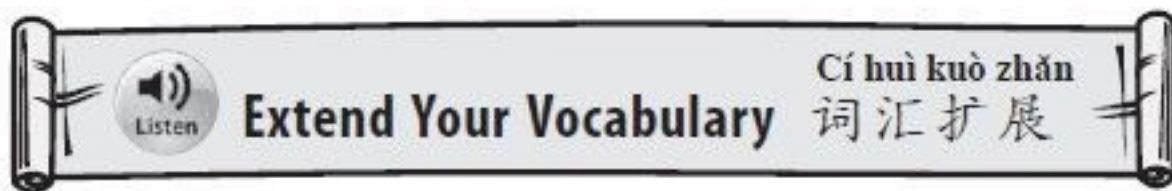
他是我的朋友。(This is my friend.)

**Tā men shì wǒ de bà ba, mā ma.**

他们是我的爸爸、妈妈。(These are my dad and mom.)

**Nǐ jiào shén me míng zì?**

你叫什么名字?(What's your name?)



This table lists the singular and plural personal pronouns. When you read through it, you will find that it's pretty easy to memorize them. To form plural pronouns, you simply need to add one word, “**men**,” after the singular pronoun.

	nǐ	nín	wǒ	tā	tā	tā
--	----	-----	----	----	----	----



<b>SINGULAR personal pronouns</b>	你 you	您 you (respectful)	我 I	他 he	她 she	它 it
<b>PLURAL personal pronouns</b>	nǐ men 你们 you	nín men 您们 you (respectful)	wǒ men 我们 we	tā men 他们 they	tā men 她们 they	tā men 它们 they

You have learned how to introduce your parents and friend(s) in **Dialog 1**. Now you will learn how to introduce your husband or wife and your child(ren) in **Dialog 2**. A very important topic, as they'll be happy to remind you!

To start, listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, and repeat each word during the pause provided. You also need to pay careful attention to the tone of each word. When you finish **New Words 2**, you will hear how Lily introduces her husband and daughter to Jack: listen to their conversation in **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Lily: This is my husband, Xu Bin.  
**Tā shì wǒ de xiān shēng, Xǔ Bīn.**  
 他是我的先生, 许斌。



Lily: This is Jack.  
**Tā shì Jié kè.**  
他是杰克。

Xu Bin: How do you do, Jack!  
**Nǐ hǎo, Jié kè!**  
你好, 杰克!

Jack: It's nice to meet you.  
**Hěn gāo xìng rèn shí nǐ.**  
很高兴认识你。

Lily: This is my daughter, Mao Mao.  
**Tā shì wǒ de nǚ ér, Máo mao.**  
她是我的女儿, 毛毛。

Jack: Hello, Mao Mao!  
**Nǐ hǎo, Máo mao!**  
你好, 毛毛!

Mao Mao: Hello!  
**Nǐ hǎo!**  
你好!

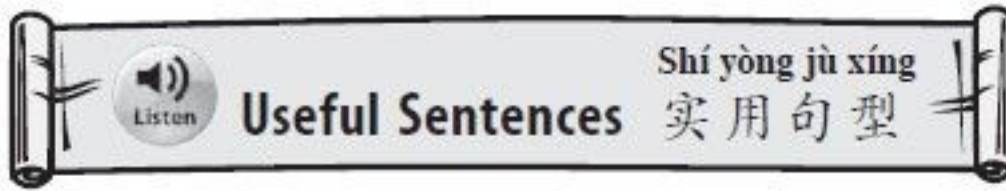


先生 xiān shēng	husband
先生 xiān shēng	Mr./ gentleman
许斌 Xǔ bīn	Xu Bin (name)
他 tā	he
认识 rèn shí	meet
高兴 gāo xìng	glad
她 tā	she
女儿 nǚ ér	daughter
毛毛 Máo mao	Mao Mao (name)



- ① The word “**xiān shēng**” in Chinese is equivalent to “sir” or “gentleman” in English and is used as a formal and respectful title for adult males outside the family. In Chinese, “husband” can be said as **zhàng fu**, **xiān shēng**, **ài ren** or **lǎo gōng**. **Zhàng fu** is used formally. In casual settings, people use **lǎo gōng**. **Xiān shēng** can be used in either situation. Similarly, “wife” can be **qī zi**, **tài tai**, **ài ren** or **lǎo pó** in Chinese. **Qī zi** is a formal term; **lǎo pó** is a casual term; and **tài tai** can be used in either formal or casual situations. The genderless term **ài ren** means “spouse.”
- ② Pay special attention to the word “**ta**.” When you hear “**ta**” in Chinese, it indicates “he (him),” “she (her),” or “it” depending on the conversation context, because these three different characters are all pronounced exactly the same way. Similar to English, though, the *written* characters are different in Chinese. “**Ta**” written as 他 **tā** means “he (him)”; “**ta**” written as 她 **tā** means “she (her)”; and “**ta**” written as 它 **tā** means “it.”
- ③ Two quick things to note about the pinyin **ǔ**: (1) When pinyin **j**, **q**, **x**, or **y** is used before **ǔ**, the two dots on top of it should be omitted, as in the word **yú** “fish.” (2) when **n** or **l**

is in front of **ü**, the two dots should be kept, as in **nǚ ér** (“daughter”) in the dialog.



Below are some key sentences that are frequently used in introducing people.

**Tā shì wǒ xiān shēng.**

他是我先生。(This [He] is my husband.)

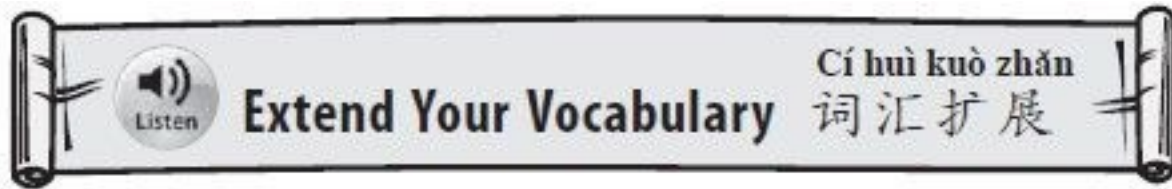
**Tā shì wǒ nǚ ér.**

她是我女儿。(This [She] is my daughter.)

**Hěn gāo xìng rèn shí nǐ.**

很高兴认识你。(It's nice to meet you.)





Here are some personal titles used in Chinese. Knowing them might come in handy.

<b>zhàng fu</b> 丈夫 husband—formal and respectful	<b>xiān shēng</b> 先生 husband—formal or casual	<b>lǎo gōng</b> 老公 husband—very casual	<b>tài tai</b> 太太 wife—formal or casual
<b>qī zi</b> 妻子 wife—formal and respectful	<b>lǎo pó</b> 老婆 wife—very casual	<b>fù mǔ</b> 父母 parents	<b>ér zi</b> 儿子 son



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - www.ebook-converter.com\*\*\*\*\*

**Extend Your Vocabulary.** The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in the previous chapter. Go ahead and give it a try!



Tā shì wǒ de bà ba.  
1. 他是我的爸爸。

Nǐ jiào shén me míng zì?  
2. 你叫 什 么 名 字?

Tā shì wǒ de tài tai.  
• 她是我的太太。

Tā shì wǒ de ér zi.  
• 他是我的儿子。

Tā men shì wǒ de fù mǔ.  
• 他 们 是 我的父母。

Nín men shì tā de fù mǔ ma?  
• 您 们 是 他的 父 母 吗?

Tā hē kā fēi bù hē chá.  
• 他 喝 咖 啡 不 喝 茶。

Tā men shì wǒ men de péng yǒu.  
• 他 们 是 我 们 的 朋 友。

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dá àn

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits into the sentence.

Tā shì wǒ .

1. 他 是 我 ( ) 。

<b>mā ma</b>	<b>fù mǔ</b>	<b>xiān shēng</b>	<b>nǚ ér</b>
A. 妈妈	B. 父母	C. 先生	D. 女儿

**Rèn shí nǐ hěn .**

2. 认识你很（ ）。

<b>míng zi</b>	<b>huān yíng</b>	<b>gāo xìng</b>	<b>péng yǒu</b>
A. 名字	B. 欢迎	C. 高兴	D. 朋友

**Fān yì**

## **C. Translate 翻译**

Translate the following sentences into pinyin.

Example: This is my friend.— <b>Tā shì wǒ de péng yǒu.</b>
--

1) What is your name? \_\_\_\_\_

2) My name is Tom. \_\_\_\_\_

3) This is my husband. \_\_\_\_\_

4) This is my daughter. \_\_\_\_\_

Yòng pīn yīn zào jù

## D. Use Pinyin to Make Sentences

用拼音造句

For each phrase, add Chinese words you know to make a complete sentence. See how many different sentences you can say for each line!

Example: This is my wife. ——**Tā shì wǒ de qī zi.**

1) You are \_\_\_\_\_  
**Nǐ shì** \_\_\_\_\_

2) I am \_\_\_\_\_  
**Wǒ shì** \_\_\_\_\_

3) These are \_\_\_\_\_  
**Tā men shì** \_\_\_\_\_

4) We are \_\_\_\_\_  
**Wǒ men shì** \_\_\_\_\_

Zhōng wén huā xù

**TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**



# The Traditional Chinese Family

A traditional Chinese family consists of two, three, sometimes four generations who live under the same roof. Grandparents take care of their grandchildren while their sons or daughters work. Chinese think that taking care of their elderly parents is their moral responsibility. They respect, care, and love in a way that preserves the family harmony and social stability. In modern China, although many young people live and work far from their parents, they frequently contact their parents by phone or email, and visit their parents during weekends and holidays, especially Chinese New Year.



In Chinese families, adults call their own children or other children whom they know very well by their first names or nicknames. But, children can never call their parents or other adults by their names, because that would be considered rude. Children or younger people have to call their parents, older relatives, or their parents' friends by certain titles. Some of these titles are similar to those you may use in English, such as

爸爸 **bà ba** for “dad” and 妈妈 **mā ma** for “mom.” And other titles are unique to Chinese. For example, 姐姐 **jiě jie** is for “older sister.” Some courtesy titles used for older relatives or parents’ friends are 伯伯 **bó bo** or 叔叔 **shū shu** for a male adult and 阿姨 **ā yí** for a female adult.

## For Your Enjoyment

The idioms and the proverb here, which relate to traditional family and home, are commonly used by native Chinese speakers.



四世同堂 **Sì shì tóng táng** (an idiom): Four generations living under the same roof.

家和万事兴 **Jiā hé wàn shì xìng** (a proverb): If a family is harmonious together, everything will be prosperous.

宾至如归 **Bīn zhì rú guī** (an idiom): To make a guest feel as comfortable as at his (or her) own home.

From ancient times to the present, it’s impossible to count how many poems have been written to describe people’s emotions and feelings. There are just too many! And China has certainly contributed its share to the world. Here is one short but very popular Tang poem that a lot of Chinese know.

The author, Wang Wei, is one of the well-known poets of the Tang Dynasty (618–907). This is his most famous poem.



## LOVESICKNESS

by Wang Wei

The red berries grow in southern lands.  
How many seedlings  
sprout forth this spring?  
I wish you'd pick a bundle of them  
in remembrance of me,  
For it provokes lovesickness best.

Xiang si  
相思

Wáng Wéi  
王维

Hóng	dòu	shēng	nán	guó,
红	豆	生	南	国，
chūn	lái	fā	jǐ	zhī?
春	来	发	几	枝？
Yuàn	jūn	duō	cǎi	xié,
愿	君	多	采	撷，
cǐ	wù	zuì	xiāng	sī.
此	物	最	相	思。

## Suggestions

✎ Americans often say “I love you,” “I love this,” and “I love that”...the word “love,” under many circumstances, doesn’t have a serious significance, and it just means that people like something/somebody very much or are excited about it/them. But in Chinese culture, the word “love”—爱 ài—is a serious word and is reserved to talk about genuine love. Most of the time, it is only used between lovers. It is also used to express a respectful feeling to parents and the motherland, or to express an intimate feeling to children. So take note of this difference between western culture and Chinese culture. You should be careful not to use this special word “爱 ài” casually—for example, you wouldn’t say the word “love” to young women or men in China—in order to avoid embarrassment.

✎ In China, you often hear the word 老外 lǎo wài. It means “foreigner(s),” and it is a neutral term. Similarly, Chinese call their colleagues “Lǎo Lǐ,” “Lǎo Hú,” etc. Here Lǎo means “old,” a little bit in the sense of “old chap.” Lǎo also reflects some degree of respectfulness. Wài means “outside.” Lǎo wài is a general term for people from foreign countries, and has nothing to do with age here, nor does it have any negative meaning.

✎ Don’t be too surprised if your new Chinese friends ask your income and age, how many cars you have, how big your house is, or other seemingly personal questions. It is a part of Chinese culture, and it is not viewed as being nosy; it is the way that people express their friendly interest. Chinese often talk about these topics among themselves. A foreigner’s answers are particularly interesting to Chinese because they

would like to know more about life in foreign countries. Smiling or changing the subject may be a smart choice if a topic like this comes up in a conversation with your Chinese friends, or if you don't mind you could simply answer the questions.

## **Do You Know?**

- ❶ Which traditional holidays are most important to the Chinese? (Bonus point: Which one is more important than all the others?)
- ❷ What are the terms in Chinese for the twenty-fifth and fiftieth wedding anniversaries?

## **See you later!**

Now you have learned how to introduce family members to other people. In addition, you've learned 46 new words, a few more useful sentences, idioms, and proverb, a poem, and some Chinese cultural info and customs.

Even though family is great, you probably also want to know how to introduce yourself to other people at parties or business events, right? That's up next as we move on to Chapter 3.

But first, we should take a short break. See you soon!



# CHAPTER 3

## 第三章

Dì sān zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Getting Together 聚会 Jù huì

There will be an annual holiday event at Lily's husband's company. Lily and her husband invite Jack to go with them to the

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

event. Jack is excited about having a chance to meet more people.

In this chapter, you will learn how to say the names of different countries and nationalities in Chinese. You also will learn a bit about China's many ethnic groups. You can add to your idiom collection some new phrases related to friendship, and enjoy another well-known Tang poem. Plus, we will discuss some mistakes you'll want to avoid if you go to China.

Are you ready? Here we go!

Listen carefully to the audio for **New Words 1**. Next, read along with me as I pronounce each word or phrase, then repeat it during the pause provided. When you finish practicing the New Words, listen to the conversation in **Dialog 1**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.

In this dialog, you will notice there are not many new words. Let's begin!



Lily: This is my friend, Jack.

**Zhè shì wǒ de péng yǒu Jié kè.**

这是我的朋友杰克。

Zhang: Hello! My name is Zhang Xiao yuan.

**Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào Zhāng Xiǎo yuán.**

你好, 我叫张 小 源。

Jack: It's nice to meet you.

**Rèn shí nǐ hěn gāo xìng.**

认识你很高兴。

Zhang: Same here. This is my business card.

**Wǒ yě shì. Zhè shì wǒ de míng piàn.**

我也是。这是我的名片。

Jack: Thank you! Do you work at a joint venture company?

**Xiè xie! Nǐ zài hé zī gōng sī gōng zuò?**

谢谢! 你在合资公司工作?

Zhang: Yes, it's a Canadian-Chinese joint venture company.

**Shì de, shì jiā ná dà hé zhōng guó de hé zī**

是的, 是加拿大和中国的合资

**gōng sī.**

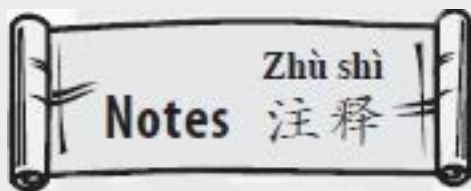
公司。





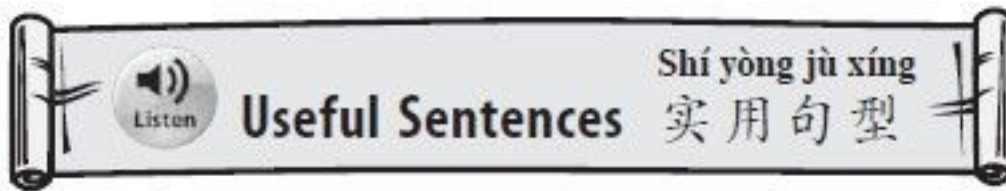


聚会 jù huì	get together
张 Zhāng	Zhang (last name)
小源 Xiǎo yuán	Xiao Yuan (first name)
名片 míng piàn	business card
合资 hé zī	joint venture
公司 gōng sī	company
工作 gōng zuò	work
加拿大 jiā ná dà	Canada
加拿大的/ 加拿大人 jiā ná dà de/ jiā ná dà rén	Canadian



- ❶ In Chinese, there are some duplicated verbs; 谢谢 xiè xie is one that you have already learned. When you pronounce these duplicated words, the tones of the two words are different. The tone of the second word is always a neutral tone. You will see more duplicated verbs later on, in other chapters.

- ② Like verbs, nouns also can be duplicated. Some people like to choose duplicated nouns as first names or nicknames for their children. For example, Lily calls her daughter “**Máo mao**.” “Mao” is a noun here, and “**Máo mao**” as a nickname has a cute ring to it. The Chinese version of Lily is “**Lì lì**” which is a very popular duplicated-words first name among Chinese women.



These sentences from the dialog are good ones to remember. They are especially handy during your social or business activities in China.

**Zhè shì wǒ de míng piàn.**

这是我的名片。(This is my business card.)

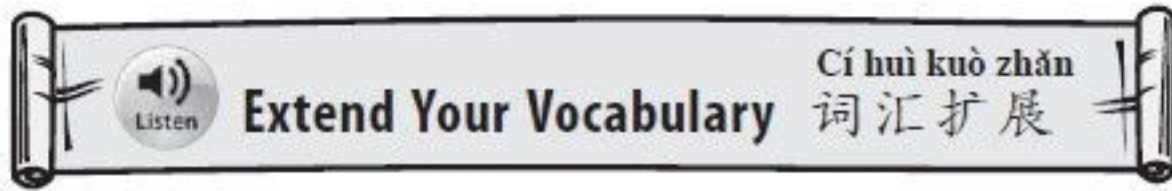
**Nǐ zài hé zī gōng sī gōng zuò?**

你在合资公司工作?(Do you work at a joint venture company?)

**Zhè shì jiā ná dà hé zhōng guó de hé zī gōng sī.**

这是加拿大和中国的合资公司。

(This is a Canadian–Chinese joint venture company.)



It's useful to be able to ask people where they are from, so you'll probably want to be able to pronounce other countries' names in Chinese. Some are listed here.

<b>měi guó</b> 美国 America	<b>ào dà lì yà</b> 澳大利亚 Australia	<b>yīng guó</b> 英国 Britain	<b>zhōng guó</b> 中国 China	<b>fǎ guó</b> 法国 France
<b>dé guó</b> 德国 Germany	<b>yìn dù</b> 印度 India	<b>yì dà lì</b> 意大利 Italy	<b>rì běn</b> 日本 Japan	<b>xīn xī lán</b> 新西兰 New Zealand

You have learned some sentences for basic communication at a business event, along with some countries' names. Good work. Now you'll continue to learn more about how to introduce one another and discuss nationalities.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Then read along with

me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 2**, move on to the Notes.



Peter: Hello! I'm Peter.  
**Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ shì Bǐ dé.**  
你好！我是彼得。

Ling Zi: I'm Ling Zi. It's nice to meet you.  
**Wǒ shì Líng zǐ. Rèn shí nǐ hěn gāo xìng.**  
我是玲子。认识你很高兴。

Peter: Same here.  
**Wǒ yě shì.**  
我也是。

Ling Zi: Are you American?  
**Nǐ shì měi guó rén ma?**  
你是美国人吗?

Peter: No, I'm not. I'm British. How about you?

**Bú shì. Wǒ shì yīng guó rén, nǐ ne?**  
不是。我是英国人,你呢?

Ling Zi: I'm Japanese.

**Wǒ shì rì běn rén.**  
我是日本人。

Peter: Really? You look Chinese.

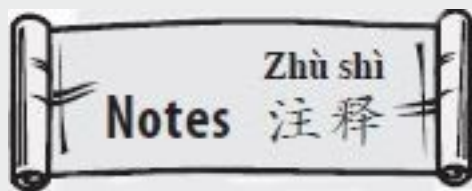
**Zhēn de ma? Nǐ hěn xiàng zhōng guó rén.**  
真的吗? 你很像中国人。

Ling Zi: Many people say that.

**Hěn duō rén dōu zhè me shuō.**  
很多人都这么说。



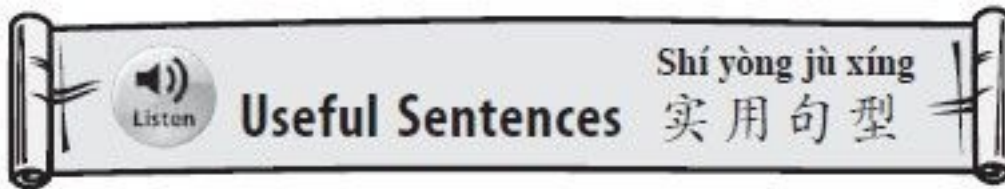
彼得 Bǐ dé	Peter (first name)
玲子 Líng zǐ	Ling Zi (first name)
美国人 měi guó rén	American
英国 yīng guó	England/Britain
英国人 yīng guó rén	English/British
日本 rì běn	Japan
日本人 rì běn rén	Japanese
真的 zhēn de	really
像 xiàng	look like
中国人 zhōng guó rén	Chinese
这么说 zhè me shuō	say the same
都 dōu	all



- ① The verb 是 **shì** means “to be/yes” in English. **Shì** is often used with other words or phrases to form a sentence. Most of the time **shì** emphasizes a specific element in a sentence. Look at this example: 他是美国人 **Tā shì měi guó rén** (He is American). Here 是 **shì** means “to be” rather than “yes.” It functions as a verb required to form a complete sentence. To change your sentence to mean the opposite,

you need to add 不 **bú** before 是 **shì** to form 不是 **bú shì** —which is literally equivalent to “be not” in English. For instance: 他不是美国人 **Tā bú shì měi guó rén** (He is not American).

- ② 你叫什么名字? **Nǐ jiào shén me míng zì?** means “What is your name?” It is a casual way to ask. To ask the name of an elderly person or to ask a person’s name at a formal occasion, people usually say 您贵姓 **Nín guì xìng?** (it means “What is your honorable family name?”) to show politeness and respect.



Work on practicing these sentences until you can remember them by heart.

**Nǐ shì yīng guó rén ma?**

你是英国人吗? (Are you British?)

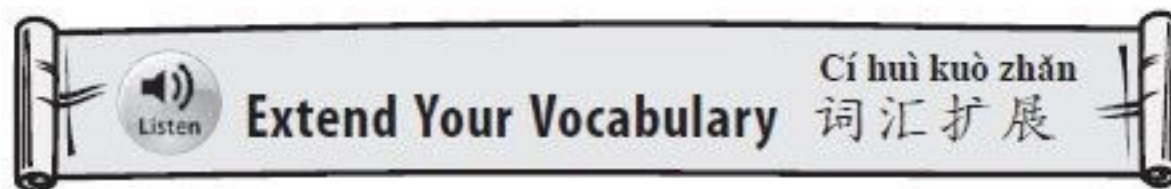
**Bú shì, wǒ shì fǎ guó rén.**

不是,我是法国人。(No, I’m not. I’m French.)

**Hěn duō rén dōu zhè me shuō.**

很多人都这么说。(Many people say the same.)





Now you're about to learn even more nationalities and regions in Chinese.

<b>měi guó rén</b> 美国人 American	<b>ào dà lì yà rén</b> 澳大利亚人 Australian	<b>yīng guó rén</b> 英国人 British	<b>jiā ná dà rén</b> 加拿大人 Canadian
<b>fǎ guó rén</b> 法国人 French	<b>rì běn rén</b> 日本人 Japanese	<b>fēi zhōu rén</b> 非洲人 African	<b>yà zhōu rén</b> 亚洲人 Asian





Let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Go ahead and give it a try!



Wǒ zài měi guó gōng sī gōng zuò.

1. 我在美国公司工作。

Tā shì fǎ guó rén.

2. 他是法国人。

Wǒ zài yīng guó gōng zuò.

• 我在英国工作。

Tā zài ào dà lì yà ma?

• 他在澳大利亚吗?

Tā zài hé zī gōng sī gōng zuò.

• 她在合资公司工作。

Tā bú shì měi guó rén.

• 他不是美国人。

Wǒ shì yīng guó rén.

• 我是英国人。

Nǐ shì jiā ná dà rén.

• 你是加拿大人。

Xuǎn zé lián xiàn

## B. Connect the Sentences 选择连线

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) Are you American?

a) Tā bú shì yīng guó rén

2) I'm from India.

b) Nǐ shì měi guó rén ma

3) He is not British.

c) Wǒ cóng yìn dù lái

4) She's from Beijing.

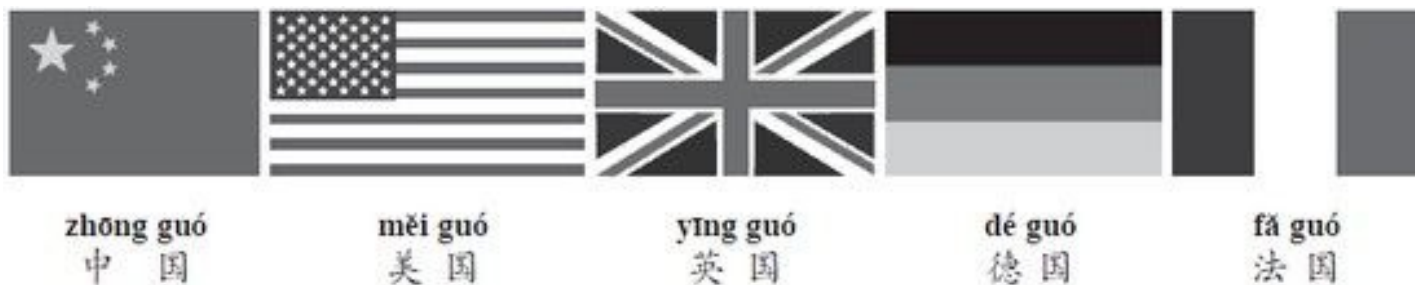
d) Tā cóng běi jīng lái

Kàn tú shuō zhōng  
wén

## C. See Pictures and Speak Chinese

看图说中文

This will probably be easy for you. Try it!



Yòng pīn yīn zào jù

## D. Use Pinyin to Make Sentences

用拼音造句

For each phrase, add Chinese words you know to make a complete sentence. See how many different sentences you can say for each line!

Example: I am American. ——**Wǒ shì měi guó rén.**

1) He is \_\_\_\_\_  
**Tā shì** \_\_\_\_\_

2) She is not \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

Tā bú shì \_\_\_\_\_

3) Are you \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Ní shì \_\_\_\_\_ ma?

4) I am not \_\_\_\_\_  
Wǒ bú shì \_\_\_\_\_

Zhōng wén huā xù

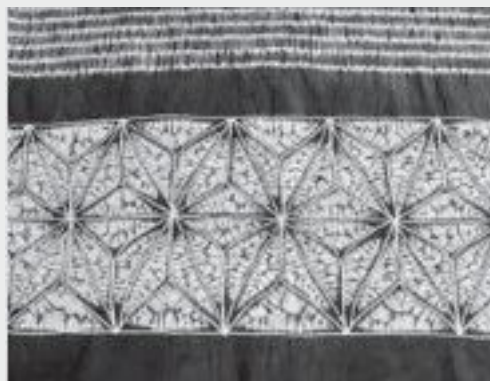
## TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮

### About China's Minorities

China has fifty-six ethnic groups officially recognized by the government. The largest group is Han, which constitutes around 90% of the total population. Some of the minority groups include Zhuang, Man, Hui, Miao, Uighurs, Yi, Tu Jia, Mongols, Tibetans, Koreans, Bai and Sa Ni, and many more. The population of the minority groups has grown faster than that of the Han, especially since 1980. This is because minority Chinese do not have to follow the one-child policy, while Han Chinese do. Most of the minority groups' people live in the southwest and northwest parts of China, although most of the minority Koreans live in the northeast area of China.



Most ethnic groups have their own traditions and customs, spoken languages, holidays and celebrations. Their foods and eating habits, clothes, songs and dances also differ from those of the Han. The arts are distinctive too. For example, some minority groups living in the southwest are famed for their batik skills, 蜡染 **là rǎn** in Chinese. Their beautifully dyed cloth features unique designs and colors, and is used to make products ranging from clothes to bags to tablecloths. Most have very bright colors, but in the Gui Zhou area, batik cloths are blue and white. Why? It's because Gui Zhou produces a special "blue grass" that's used to make their unique blue dye.



There have been many Chinese movies about Chinese minorities. Among them, “刘三姐 **Liú sān jiě**,” “阿玛诗 **Ā shī mǎ**,” “五多金花 **Wǔ duō jīn huā**,” and “冰山上的来

客 **Bīng shān shàng de lái kè**” are especially well-known. These movies described some of their love stories and cultures, and were widely popular when they were produced before the Cultural Revolution (1966–1976). In fact, some of the songs from these movies are still very popular in China now, and some are available with English subtitles.

## For Your Enjoyment

Commonly heard in China, these two idioms and a line from a poem describe friendship in different ways. Enjoy them.



志同道合 **Zhì tóng dào hé** (an idiom): To have the same ambitions, ideas, and interests.

情同手足 **Qíng tóng shǒu zú** (an idiom): Two people as close as hands and feet.

海内存知己，天涯若比邻 **Hǎi nèi cún zhī jǐ, tiān yá ruò bǐ lín** (from a poem): Even when far from each other, true friends’ deep understanding of each other brings a distant land closer.

Here is a well-known Tang (618–907) poem. Chinese often cite the last two sentences to encourage young people or friends.





## ASCENDING THE STORK TOWER

by Wang Zhi Huan

The dimming sun sags into the far peaks;  
The Yellow River glides into the Bohai Sea. . . .  
I yearn to climb to a higher story,  
and exhaust my eyes  
In gazing out over a thousand li.\*

Dēng guān què lóu

登 鵲 雀 樓

Wáng Zhī Huàn

王 之 渙

Bái	rì	yī	shān	jìn,
白	日	依	山	尽,
huáng	hé	rù	hǎi	liú.
黄	河	入	海	流。
Yù	qióng	qiān	lǐ	mù,
欲	穷	千	里	目,
gèng	shàng	yī	céng	lóu.
更	上	一	层	楼。

\* li = a half kilometer

## Suggestions

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

As in most western countries, when people get together or attend a party in China, they often like to share drinks. Long ago, wine wasn't popular in China. Chinese preferred to drink liquors, normally called 白酒 **bái jiǔ** in Chinese. But since China opened its doors to the western world, western-style wines, both red and white, have also been welcomed by Chinese, especially by the younger generation. White wine should, strictly speaking, be translated into Chinese as 白葡萄酒 **bái pú táo jiǔ**. But more often, for convenience, Chinese just use the shortened term “白酒 **bái jiǔ**” to order white wine, instead of saying 白葡萄酒 **bái pú táo jiǔ**. As a foreigner in China, you need to know the difference between 白葡萄酒 **bái pú táo jiǔ** and 白酒 **bái jiǔ**. If you don't want to drink Chinese liquor, the literal “白酒 **bái jiǔ**,” at an event, a party or a restaurant, you need to make sure that your order for wine is clear...it is safest to say “I would like to have a glass of 白葡萄酒 **bái pú táo jiǔ**.”





📖 On Chinese New Year (or The Spring Festival, which is the term Chinese people prefer to use), if you are invited to a Chinese friend's home, you not only need to bring a present to the family, but if you want to follow Chinese tradition you also need to buy some small red envelopes, put some money inside and bring them with you—especially if you're visiting a household that has young children. This gift is a long-held Chinese tradition, one that's been passed from generation to generation. At Chinese New Year, parents will give each of their unmarried children a small red envelope with some money. This is called 给红包 **gěi hóng bāo**. The money itself is called 压岁钱 **yā suì qián**, and represents parents' hopes for their children to be happy, healthy, and safe in the upcoming year.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ Who was the first person to sail overseas in Chinese history?  
And when?
- ❷ Who was the first student from China to graduate from an Ivy League university? When—and which university was it?

## See you later!

It feels pretty good to be able to say the name of your country and your nationality in Chinese. You have learned 46 new words in this chapter, as a matter of fact. Have you noticed that the word for a nationality in Chinese simply means adding another word, **rén** (which means “a person”), after the name of the country? Now that you know this rule, it will be easy for you to talk with people about their countries of origin.

Next up: we'll learn how to deal with another common situation, one found in any country.

# CHAPTER 4

## 第四章

Dì sì zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## How to Apologize 道歉 Dào qiàn

Lily and her husband invite Jack and other friends to their house

to celebrate Chinese National Day (October 1st). The guests arrive on time...except for Andy. Suddenly, the telephone rings. It's a call from Andy. What's happened, and how does he offer his apology to the hosts for being late?

You may have already guessed: in this chapter, you will learn how to apologize when you are late. And as always, you'll learn other things too. Have you ever heard the well-known Chinese idiom about apology? Do you know why the game of Go (**wéi qí** in Chinese) is China's favorite game and how it is played? Why do Chinese usually keep quiet when they notice that someone isn't behaving appropriately in public?

Get ready to find out—let's start a new chapter.

Now you will find out what happens to Andy en route, how Andy expresses it, and how to apologize when you won't arrive on time.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Andy: Sorry. I might be late.

**Duì bù qǐ, wǒ kě néng huì chí dào.**

对不起,我可能会迟到。

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

Lily: What happened?  
**Zěn me huí shì?**  
怎么回事?

Andy: There's heavy traffic on the road.  
**Lù shàng tè bié dǔ.**  
路上特别堵。

Lily: Why?  
**Wèi shén me ya?**  
为什么呀?

Andy: There's a car accident.  
**Yǒu yī qǐ chē huò.**  
有一起车祸。

Lily: Don't hurry and drive slowly.  
**Nǐ bié zháo jí, màn diǎn er.**  
你别着急,慢点儿。

Andy: See you later.  
**Yī huì er jiàn!**  
一会儿见!



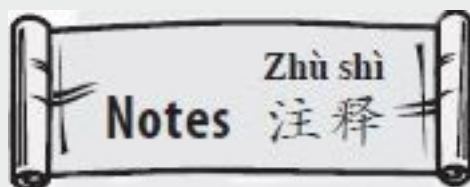
道歉 dào qiàn	apology
对不起 duì bù qǐ	sorry
可能 kě néng	may be/ might
迟到 chí dào	late
怎么回事 zěn me huí shì	What happened?
路/路上 lù/lù shàng	road/ on the road
特别 tè bié	special
堵 dǔ	traffic jam
为什么 wèi shén me	why
有 yǒu	have
起 qǐ	a measure word
车祸 chē huò	car accident
别着急 bié zháo jí	don't hurry

慢点儿 **màn diǎn er**

slowly

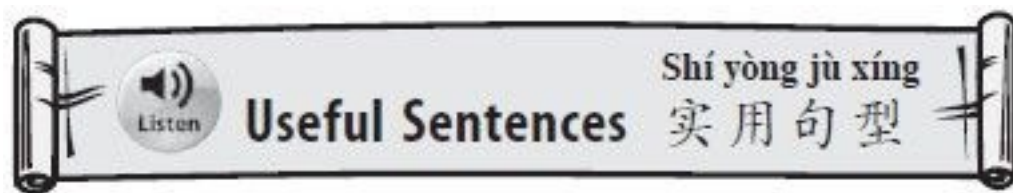
一会儿见 **yī huì er jiàn**

See you later



① 为什么 **Wèi shén me** means “why.” This interrogative adverb is commonly used to ask for a reason. For instance: “你为什么迟到 **Nǐ wèi shén me chí dào** (Why are you late?)” To respond to this question, people usually use a sentence that starts with 因为 **yīn wéi** (because). However, in spoken Chinese, sometimes **yīn wéi** (because) can be omitted, like in Andy’s reply to Lily in the dialog: “**Yǒu yī qǐ chē huò** (There’s a car accident).”

② 堵 **Dǔ** is short for 堵车 **dǔ chē** meaning “traffic jam.” Sometimes people use the alternative term 塞车 **sāi chē**. No matter how you say it, in China’s large cities traffic jams are common, especially during rush hours and holidays.



In daily life, you often hear Chinese expressing their apologies

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



and explanations with these sentences.

**Duì bù qǐ, wǒ chí dào le.**

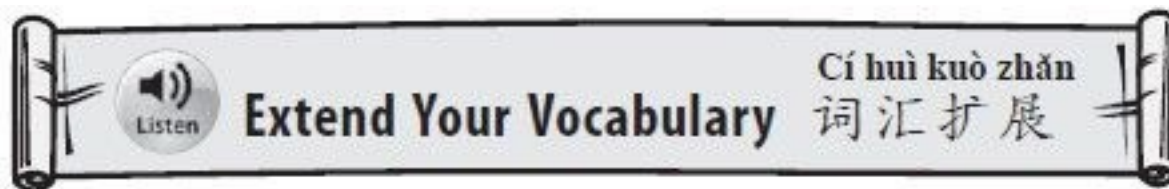
对不起,我迟到了。(I'm sorry. I'm late.)

**Nǐ bié zhāo jí, màn diǎn er.**

你别着急,慢点儿。(Don't hurry, take your time.)

**Lù shàng yǒu chē huò.**

路上有车祸。(There is a car accident on the road.)



Next time you drive somewhere and get held up in traffic, you might think about these Chinese words and try to use them.

<b>chē huò</b> 车祸 a car accident	<b>dǔ chē</b> 堵车 traffic jam	<b>sāi chē</b> 塞车 traffic jam
<b>chí dào le</b> 迟到了 be late	<b>lái wǎn le</b> 来晚了 come late	



We all accidentally break things once in awhile. If you break a glass at a party—oh no!—what will you say to your host in Chinese? Don't worry, you're about to learn it.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish **New Words 2**, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Andy: I'm so sorry. I broke a vase in the bathroom.

**Hěn bào qiàn, wǒ bǎ cè suǒ de huā píng**

很抱歉, 我把厕所的花瓶

**dǎ pò le.**

打破了。

Lily: Did you cut your hand?

**Nǐ méi yǒu huá pò shǒu ba?**

你没有划破手吧?

Andy: No, I didn't.

**Méi yǒu.**

没有。

Lily: I'm glad you didn't cut your hand.

**Nǐ de shǒu méi huá pò jiù hǎo.**

你的手没划破就好。

Andy: I feel really sorry.

**Wǒ zhēn de bù hǎo yì sī.**

我真的不好意思。

Lily: Don't worry about it.

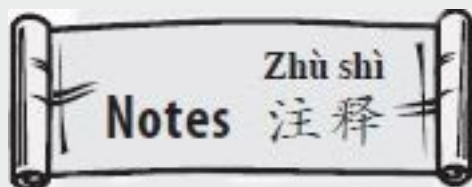
**Zhè méi shén me.**

这没什么。

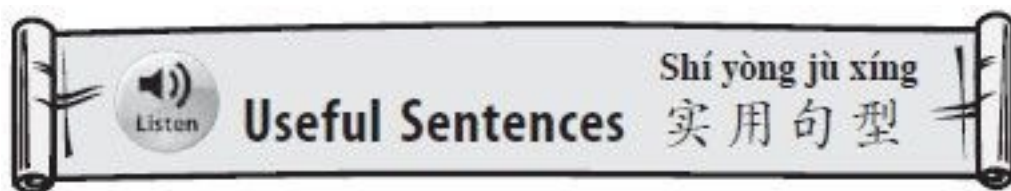


抱歉 <b>bào qiàn</b>	sorry
把 <b>bǎ</b>	hold/take
厕所 <b>cè suǒ</b>	bathroom

花瓶 huā píng	vase
打破 dǎ pò	break
打破了 dǎ pò le	broke
划破 huá pò	cut
手 shǒu	hand
就好 jiù hǎo	right/good
不好意思 bù hǎo yì sī	sorry/ embarrassed
这 zhè	this
没有 méi yǒu	do not have



- ① 吧 **Ba** means different things in different settings. 吧 **Ba** can be used to create an interrogative sentence, as we see in Lily's sentence “你没有划破手吧? **Nǐ méi yǒu huá pò shǒu ba?** (Did you cut your hand?)”.
- ② The verb 有 **yǒu** means “to have” and its antonym is 没有 **méi yǒu**, “do not have.” Be careful not to confuse it with “yes 是 **shì**” and “no, not 不是 **bú shì**.” You can practice these contrasting statements: **Wǒ yǒu chē** (I have a car) and **Wǒ méi yǒu chē** (I don't have a car); **Tā shì fā guó rén** (He is French) and **Tā bú shì fā guó rén** (He is not French).



My recommendation: memorize the following three sentences, because they can come in very handy. Take a look, and you'll see what I mean.

**Hěn bào qiàn.**

很抱歉。(I'm so sorry.)

---

**Wǒ zhēn de bù hǎo yì sī.**

我真的不好意思。(I feel really sorry.)

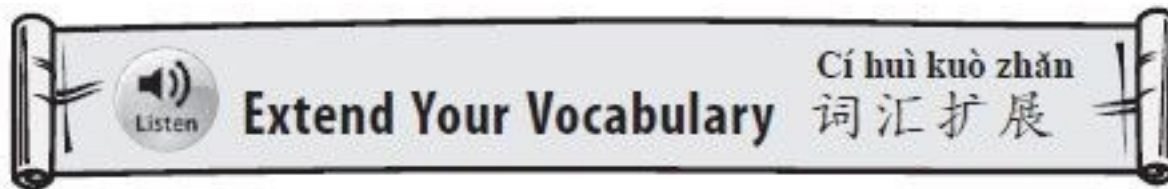
---

**Zhè méi shén me.**

这没什么。(Don't worry about it.)

---





All these phrases express “sorry” in Chinese and are used frequently in daily life.

<p><b>duì bù qǐ</b> 对不起 sorry</p>	<p><b>hěn bào qiàn</b> 很抱歉 sorry</p>	<p><b>bù hǎo yì sī</b> 不好意思 sorry/embarrassed</p>
<p><b>méi guān xi</b> 没关系 never mind</p>	<p><b>méi shén me</b> 没什么 not at all</p>	



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic

sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Lù shàng yǒu chē huò.

1. 路上有车祸。

Duì bù qǐ, wǒ lái wǎn le.

2. 对不起, 我来晚了。

Bié bù hǎo yì sī, zhè méi shén me.

3. 别不好意思, 这没什么。

Lù shàng dǔ chē.

• 路上堵车。

Lù shàng sāi chē.

• 路上塞车。

Hěn bào qiàn, wǒ chí dào le.

• 很抱歉, 我迟到了。

Zhēn bù hǎo yì sī, wǒ lái wǎn le.

• 真不好意思, 我来晚了。

Bié bù hǎo yì sī, méi guān xi!

• 别不好意思, 没关系!

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dá àn

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits into the sentence.

Wǒ kě néng huì .

1. 我可能会 ( ) 。

lù shàng

chē huò

chí dào

bēi zǐ

A. 路上

B. 车祸

C. 迟到

D. 杯子

, wǒ bǎ huā píng dǎ pò le.

2. ( ), 我把花瓶打破了。

Bié zháo jí

Duì bù qǐ

Màn diǎn er

Dǎ pò le

A. 别着急

B. 对不起

C. 慢点儿

D. 打破了

Xuǎn zé lián xiàn

## C. Connect the Sentences 选择连线

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) I am sorry.

a) Yǒu yī qǐ chē huò

2) Never mind.

b) Bié zháo jí

3) There is a car accident.

c) Qǐng kāi màn diǎn er

4) Please drive slowly.

d) Méi guān xi

5) Don't hurry.

e) Duì bù qǐ

Yòng pīn yīn zào jù

## D. Use Pinyin to Make

用拼音造

# 句

For each phrase, add Chinese words you know to make a complete sentence. See how many different sentences you can say for each line!

1) I'm sorry \_\_\_\_\_

**Duì bù qǐ** \_\_\_\_\_

2) I have \_\_\_\_\_

**Wǒ yǒu** \_\_\_\_\_

3) He does not have \_\_\_\_\_

**Tā méi yǒu** \_\_\_\_\_

4) They have \_\_\_\_\_

**Tā men yǒu** \_\_\_\_\_

Zhōng wén huā xù

**TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

**The Chinese Board Game Wei Qi (Go) 围棋**  
棋 wéi qí

When you are in China, at some point you will probably see



When you are in China, at some point you will probably see two people sitting face to face at a small square table, each moving small black or white stones on a grid. They look very conscientious. Why are they so serious? Well, they are playing a Chinese board game called 围棋 **wéi qí** in Chinese, or “Go” in English.



Chinese have been playing **wéi qí** since around the 3rd century BCE. Pictures of people playing **wéi qí** can be found in ancient books and paintings and on old porcelain art. The game is actually considered one of the four Chinese traditional intellectual activities, along with musical instrument playing, calligraphy and painting. In China these four honored activities are described as “琴 **qín**, 棋 **qí**, 书 **shū**, 画 **huà**.”

**Wéi qí** is simple on the surface, but a difficult game to master. It exercises players’ brains, requires intelligence, and helps develop logic and strategic thinking as well as perseverance and calmness. (Not too shabby for a game, right?)

The original **wéi qí** was played on a 17 x 17 line grid, but

(618–907). A full set of **wéi qí** stones contains 181 black stones and 180 white ones (a  $19 \times 19$  grid has 361 intersections). The black-stone player has an extra piece, because that player goes first. Each player also has a bowl to store his/her stones. To play, two players alternately put one stone on one of intersections. They try to use their stones to surround, and thus capture, those of the other player. The player with more stones on the board in the end wins the game.

Although **wéi qí** originated in China, it has become popular throughout Asia and beyond. Today it's played in more than forty countries. The most famous players in China are Nie Wei Ping and Zhou He Xian. There are books and websites that teach how to play, if you'd like to give it a try.

## For Your Enjoyment

This is a famous idiom about apology. It comes from the true story of a personal conflict between two officials in the Zhou kingdom (403–222 BCE) named 廉颇 **Lián Pō** and 蔺相如 **Lìn Xiāng Rú**. The story emphasizes the power of apology and forgiveness. The other two sayings were chosen from the classic books of the great philosophers Lao Zi and Kong Zi (Confucius). They do not directly talk about apology, but their implications are worth considering.



负荆请罪 **Fù jīng qǐng zuì** (an idiom): To apologize sincerely for wrongdoing.

顺其自然 **Shùn qí zì rán** (a saying): To follow the flow of nature.

己所不欲，勿施于人 **Jǐ suǒ bú yù, wù shī yú rén** (a saying): Do not put what you do not want yourself upon others. —*Kǒng Zǐ (Confucius)*

Speaking of Lao Zi's saying about following the flow of nature: the poem below is also about nature and its beauty. It is by the well-known Tang (618–907) poet we met earlier, Wang Wei.



## PASTORAL PEACE

by Wang Wei

Peach blossoms, crimson and pink,  
dewy from last night's rain;  
Pale green willows leaves  
lying in the morning mists—  
The lazy houseboy neglects to sweep them  
from the path.  
To the oriole's lullaby,  
the stranger still sleeps deep in the mountain.

Tián yuán lè (liù)

田 园 乐 (六)

Wáng Wéi

王 维

Táo	hóng	fù	hán	xiǔ	yǔ,
桃	红	复	含	宿	雨,
liǔ	lǜ	gèng	dài	zhāo	yān.
柳	绿	更	带	朝	烟。
Huā	luò	jiā	tóng	wèi	sǎo,
花	落	家	童	未	扫,
yīng	tí	shān	kè	yóu	mián.
莺	啼	山	客	犹	眠。

# Suggestions

There are many foreigners studying, working, or doing business in China nowadays, and they frequently are confused about why Chinese are so quiet in classrooms and in meetings. Why don't they speak out their opinions more directly? Why don't they challenge others who have inappropriate or wrong opinions? And vice versa, Chinese are also surprised at the way foreigners are so straightforward in expressing their opinions and in openly criticizing things they think are wrong. And although they challenge, debate, even argue, the foreigners are still friendly to each other afterwards! One of the reasons for the quiet behavior of Chinese in public is that Chinese think they should always "keep other people's face." It is pronounced as "给面子 **gěi miàn zi**" in Chinese. Chinese consider that if someone does something wrong and it's pointed out with a critical tone in public, it might hurt his/her feelings or make him/her feel publicly embarrassed. Because of this concern, Chinese usually do not directly challenge others in public, especially in front of a person's boss, spouse, parents, children, colleagues, or friends. Otherwise, that person would feel "loss of face" or 很没面子 **hěn méi miàn zi**. Sometimes, these challenges can jeopardize friendship. You may need to keep this cultural difference in mind.

As a foreigner in China, you may notice something: no "Excuse me" is said after a person sneezes, and no one nearby says anything along the lines of "Bless you." You may

wonder why. The answer is simple. Chinese think that sneezing is not a big deal. It is just a physiological reaction to a nasal stimulation and happens to everyone at any time; so it is not necessary to apologize for it to people around you. As long as you understand the way Chinese view sneezing, you will not be taken aback by this!

## **Do You Know?**

- ❶ What are the four most well-known inventions of ancient China?
- ❷ What are the names of four famous caves in China? Where are they located?

## **See you later!**

In this chapter, you have learned how to express apology in Chinese. You also learned 55 new words, useful sentences, facts about a Chinese board game, sayings by Lao Zi and Kong Zi, and more.

Now that you've learned "How to Apologize" you may be curious about how to say "Thanks" in Chinese? Perfect—you will learn that in the next chapter.

Before we start that new topic, we should probably pause for a refreshing cup of tea or coffee. I'll see you soon!



# CHAPTER 5

## 第五章

Dì wǔ zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Saying Thanks 感谢 Gǎn xiè

Lily's guests are ready to go home. Jack thanks Lily for inviting

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

him to the party that he enjoyed so much; he really likes to meet people from different countries. He also appreciates the offer of Lily's friend, Xiao Wang, of a ride home after the party.

In this chapter, you will learn different words and phrases to express thankfulness and appreciation. In traditional Chinese culture, gratitude is important; it's long been emphasized that people should respect the elderly as well as their own parents, should appreciate their parents' raising them, and should be grateful for another's help. You'll also learn a few culture tips to better understand a traditional Chinese wedding.

Please turn the page!

We're about to learn some new words for expressing thankfulness.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. Would you like to repeat the new words one more time? Take as much time as you want.

When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with the dialog, move on to the Notes.



Jack: I appreciate your inviting me to the party very much.

**Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè nǐ qǐng wǒ cān jiā jù huì.**

**我很感谢你请我参加聚会。**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



Lily: I'm glad that you could come.

**Wǒ yě hěn gāo xìng nǐ néng lái.**

我也很高兴你能来。

Jack: I like your friends.

**Wǒ xǐ huān nǐ de zhè xiē péng yǒu.**

我喜欢你的这些朋友。

Lily: They are all my good friends.

**Tā men dōu shì wǒ de hǎo péng yǒu.**

他们都是我的好朋友。

Jack: I am honored to meet them.

**Wǒ hěn róng xìng néng rèn shí tā men.**

我很荣幸能认识他们。

Lily: Come again!

**Huān yíng nǐ zài lái!**

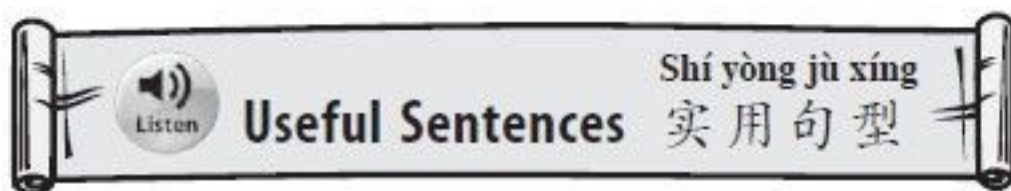
欢迎你再来!



感谢 gǎn xiè	thanks
高兴 gāo xìng	glad
能 néng	can
你的 nǐ de	your
这些 zhè xiē	these
都是 dōu shì	all
荣幸 róng xìng	honor
喜欢 xǐ huān	like
来 lái	come
再 zài	again



- ① 能 **Néng** is mostly used to express capability, and also what we might call “objective permission”...for example, “我很高兴你能来。 **Wǒ hěn gāo xìng nǐ néng lái** (I am glad you can come.)” To say its opposite, you must add 不 **bù** before 能 **néng**, forming “不能 **bù néng**”: “他不能来聚会。 **Tā bú néng lái jù huì** (He cannot come to the party.)”
- ② The character 能 **néng** is an interesting one. It can be used by itself, or in combination with other characters to form different words. You know the meanings of 能 **néng** and 不能 **bù néng**. You may still remember the word 可能 **kě néng** from the last chapter. With the addition of 可 **kě** in front of 能 **néng**, the meaning of the word changes from “be able to/capable” (能 **néng**) into “may be/might/possible” (可能 **kě néng**).



These are some new sentences to practice and add to your  
\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

growing Chinese “memory bank.”

**Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè nǐ!**

我很感谢你! (Thank you so much!)

---

**Wǒ hěn gāo xìng nǐ néng lái.**

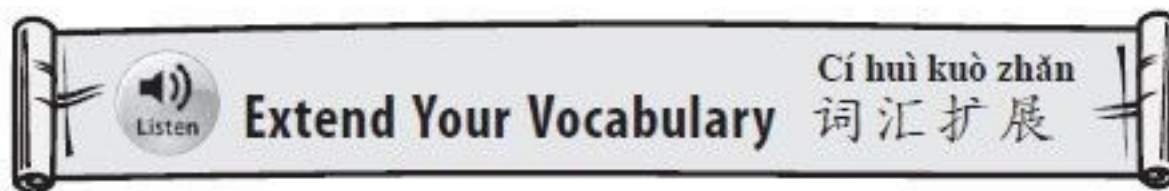
我很高兴你能来。 (I'm glad that you can come.)

---

**Huān yíng nǐ zài lái!**

欢迎你再来! (Come again!)

---



You may want to memorize these courteous words; in China, people use them every day.

**xiè xiè**

**hěn gǎn xiè**

**fēi cháng gǎn xiè**

谢谢 thank you	很感谢 thank you very much	非常感谢 appreciate
zài lái 再来 come again	zài jiàn 再见 see you later	zài huì 再会 see you later

How are you doing so far? (Keep in mind that it never hurts to go back to the earlier word lists and dialogs to review them.)

We'll now learn to request a ride and how to say "Thanks."

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2**, then follow along to speak each sentence before moving on to the Notes.



Lily: Xiao Wang, could you take Jack home?

**Xiǎo wáng, nǐ kě yǐ sòng Jié kè huí jiā ma?**

小王，你可以送杰克回家吗？

Wang: No problem!

**Méi wèn tí.**

没问题。

Wang: Jack, where do you live?

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

**Jié kè, nǐ zhù zài nǎ lǐ?**  
杰克,你 住 在 哪里?

Jack: I live in Dong Dan.  
**Wǒ zhù zài dōng dān.**  
我 住 在 东 单。

Wang: That's not far from my house.  
**Lí wǒ jiā bù yuǎn.**  
离 我 家 不 远。

Jack: Really?  
**Shì ma?**  
是 吗?

Wang: I'll drop you off at your house first.  
**Wǒ xiān sòng nǐ huí jiā.**  
我 先 送 你 回 家。

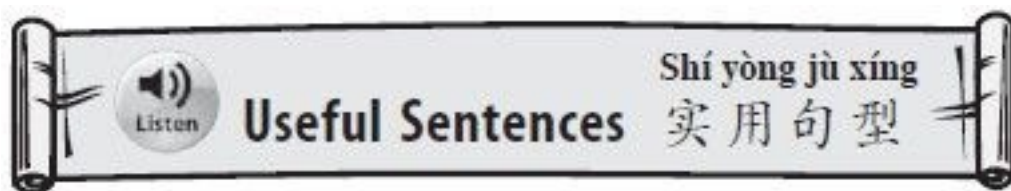
Jack: Thank you very much.  
**Fēi cháng gǎn xiè nǐ!**  
非 常 感 谢 你!



小王 Xiǎo wáng	Xiao Wang
可以 kě yǐ	may
送 sòng	send
没问题 méi wèn tí	no problem
住在 zhù zài	to live
哪里 nǎ lǐ	where
东单 dōng dān	name of place
离 lí	apart from
不远 bù yuǎn	not far from
先 xiān	first
回 huí	return
家 jiā	home
非常 fēi cháng	very/extremely



- ① The words 在 **zài** and 再 **zài** have the same pronunciations, but different meanings. In this dialog the word 在 **zài** means “in”: “我住在东单 **Wǒ zhù zài dōng dān**” (I live in Dong Dan).” The word 再 **zài** means “again”: remember “再来 **zài lái** (come again)”?
- ② The words 里 **lǐ** and 离 **lí** have the same pronunciation but have different tones as well as different meanings. Remember their differences. In this chapter, as you learned when you practiced the **New Words 2** list, 哪里 **nǎ lǐ** means “where” and 离 **lí** means “apart from.”



Again, here are sentences that you’ll find handy to know. Can you also adjust them to apply to you?

**Nǐ kě yǐ sòng tā huí jiā ma?**

你可以送他回家吗? (Could you take him home?)

**Nǐ zhù zài nǎ lǐ?**

你住在哪里? (Where do you live?)

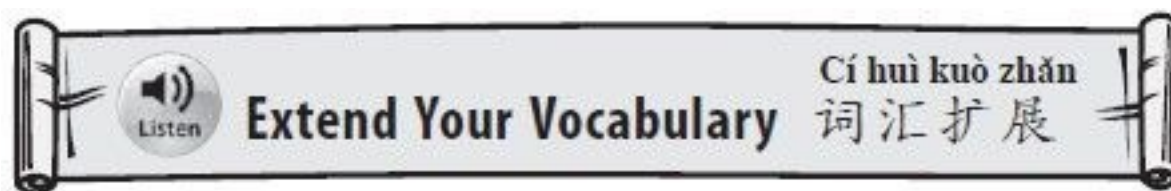
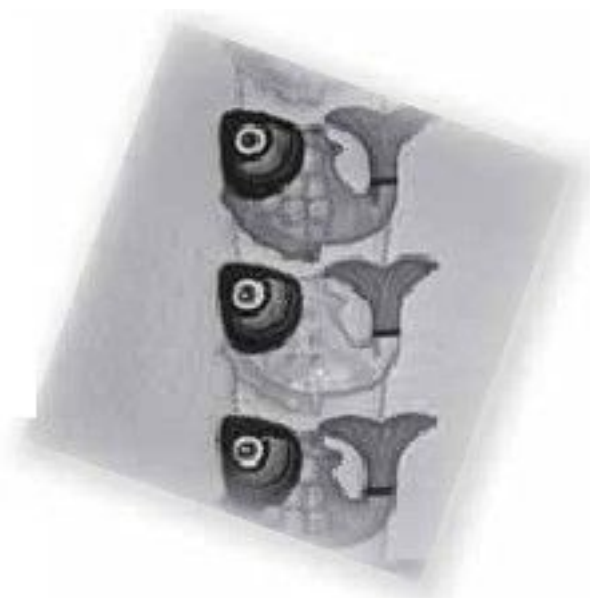
**Wǒ zhù zài běi jīng.**



我 住 在 北 京。(I live in Beijing.)

**Fēi cháng gǎn xiè nǐ!**

非 常 感 谢 你! (Thank you very much!)



The below words and phrases will probably come up more than once, whether you visit China or you run into someone to talk to who's from China. Practice them so you'll be ready to converse.

<b>huí jiā</b> 回家 go home	<b>huí shàng hǎi</b> 回上海 return to Shanghai	<b>huí měi guó</b> 回美国 return to the U.S.
<b>huān yíng</b> 欢迎 welcome	<b>huān sòng</b> 欢送 farewell	<b>huān qìng</b> 欢庆 celebrate



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Wǒ xiè xiè nǐ men.  
1. 我谢谢你们。

Wǒ huí jiā le, zài huì!  
2. 我回家了,再会!

Huān yíng nǐ men lái zhōng guó!  
3. 欢迎你们来中国!

Wǒ hěn gǎn xiè wǒ de fù mǔ.  
• 我很感谢我的父母。

Wǒ fēi cháng gǎn xiè nín.  
• 我非常感谢您。

Wǒ huí shàng hǎi le, zài jiàn!  
• 我回上海了,再见!

Tā huí měi guó de jiā.  
• 他回美国的家。

Wǒ men huān sòng tā qù yīng guó.  
• 我们欢送她去英国。

Tā men zài huān qìng jié rì.  
• 他们在欢庆节日。

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dá àn

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits into the sentence.

Wǒ hěn              rèn shí nǐ.

1) 我很 (   ) 认识你。

gǎn xiè	gāo xìng	huān yíng	xǐ huān
A. 感谢	B. 高兴	C. 欢迎	D. 喜欢

**Wǒ hěn              nǐ sòng wǒ huí jiā.**

2. 我很（ ）你送我回家。

**cān jiā**

A. 参加

**péng yǒu**

B. 朋友

**gǎn xiè**

C. 感谢

**kě yǐ**

D. 可以

**Xuǎn zé lián xiàn**

## **C. Connect the Sentences 选择连线**

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) I like Beijing.

**a) Wǒ xiān sòng nǐ huí jiā**

2) I'll drop you off at your house first.

**b) Rèn shí nǐ hěn gāo xìng**

3) Thank you very much!

**c) Wǒ xǐ huān běi jīng**

4) It's nice to meet you.

**d) Fēi cháng gǎn xiè nǐ**

**Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà**

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words of appreciation used in Chinese. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: Thank you so much for inviting me to the party!

**Hěn gǎn xiè nǐ qǐng wǒ cān jiā jù huì!**

很感谢你请我参加聚会!

Y: I'm glad you could come.

**Wǒ hěn gāo xìng nǐ néng lái.**

我很高兴你能来。

X: I'm happy too.

**Wǒ yě hěn gāo xìng.**

我也很高兴。

Y: Come again!

**Huān yíng nǐ zài lái!**

欢迎你再来!

Zhōng wén huā xù

**TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

# Jumping on the Bed Is Permitted: Weddings

In the old days, young Chinese men and women were not allowed to choose their dates or spouses by themselves. Parents usually hired a matchmaker to do that job. The whole process was very complicated, from searching for the potential spouse to the wedding itself. It required three formal letters from the groom's family to the bride's family: for the engagement, the wedding, and the after-wedding appreciation. There were also the "six etiquettes" that had to be followed, related to ensuring the lucky match of birth dates between the bride and the groom, preparing the engagement gifts, preparing the wedding gifts, choosing the wedding date, holding the ceremony, and carefully arranging the appreciations from both families after the wedding. In contrast to the American tradition where the bride's family hosts, the traditional Chinese wedding is arranged by the groom's family.



No white wedding dress and black-and-white suit for the lucky Chinese couple; instead, the bride and groom traditionally wore bright red wedding clothes. That color signifies happiness, prosperity, love, and good luck. On the

wedding day, everything from the bride's head accessories to her socks and shoes needed to be red in color.

The room for the new couple was also decorated in red. People would cut a lot of "Double Happiness 囍 xǐ xǐ" characters from red paper, and stick them on the windows and doors. Everything on the new couple's bed had to be brand new (and also red, of course). One interesting custom was that the groom's family would choose a few lucky boys and girls to jump on the bed in the hope that lots of children and good fortune would come to the new couple.

On the wedding day, the bride in her red dress and red veil, sitting in a sedan-chair, was carried from her parents' house to her future husband's house. During the wedding ceremony the new couple stood in front of their parents and bowed to them three times: the first for heaven and earth, the second for the parents, and the third for each other. A wedding banquet followed. After the wedding ceremony was over, guests and relatives would crowd into the new couple's room to tease the new couple about their wedding night and play practical jokes on them.

In modern China, most young people prefer to have a western-style wedding ceremony. But even for those couples who do choose a traditional Chinese wedding ceremony, it's much simpler now than in the old days. Interestingly, foreigners in China who marry Chinese partners often wish to have a traditional Chinese wedding ceremony.

## For Your Enjoyment



These very popular Chinese idioms and proverb show the Chinese people's emphasis on how important it is to be grateful for, considerate of, and appreciative of people who nurture and help them.



滴水之恩，当涌泉相报 **Dī shuǐ zhī ēn, dāng yǒng quán xiāng bào** (a proverb): Repay more for a small but a kind assistance.

恩重如山 **Ēn zhòng rú shān** (an idiom): Great kindness weighs as heavy as a mountain.

礼尚往来 **Lǐ shàng wǎng lái** (an idiom): Courtesy demands reciprocity.

Tang (618–907) poems are especially well known in China, because there were many famous poets during that period of time in Chinese history and most of them were very productive. This poem expresses children's gratefulness for their parents' unconditional love and has been very popular for generations.





## SONG FOR A TRAVELING SON

by Meng Jiao

The cotton clothes were sewn  
with infinite care by his mother,  
Who placed stitch after tiny stitch into her work,  
to keep him warm  
From the time he left her gate  
until the time of his late return.  
What son's love,  
as a new blade of grass,  
Can truly appreciate the all-encompassing love of his mother.

Yóu zǐ yín

游子吟

Mèng Jiao

孟郊

Cí	mǔ	shǒu	zhōng	xiàn,
慈	母	手	中	线,
yóu	zǐ	shēn	shàng	yī.
游	子	身	上	衣。
Lín	xíng	mì	mì	féng,
临	行	密	密	缝,
yì	kǒng	chí	chí	guī.
意	恐	迟	迟	归。
Shuí	yán	cùn	cǎo	xīn,
谁	言	寸	草	心,
bào	dé	sān	chūn	huī?
报	得	三	春	晖?

# Suggestions

✍ In western countries, you often openly say “thank you” when a waiter brings food to you, when someone helps you or opens a door for you, when your spouse takes the trash out, etc. In China, you may notice that people don’t say “thank you” as frequently as westerners, especially not between spouses or between parents and children. Why do Chinese not say these courteous words more often? Don’t they have good manners? To the contrary: this is a cultural norm. Chinese usually tend to keep their appreciation inside and unspoken instead of frequently expressing it verbally. They prefer to *show* their appreciation through actions, such as writing a grateful letter, buying someone a gift, or finding other occasions to help that person back. Especially among family members—between husband and wife, parents and children, siblings, and relatives—or between friends, if Chinese people said too many “thanks” to each other, they’d feel strange; as though they were less close, or as though they were ignoring their close bond. Now when you’re in China, you can realize it’s a cultural difference, not rudeness! As you stay there long enough, you will get used to it.

✍ Another thing that puzzles foreigners in China is the way Chinese respond to a compliment. In western countries, when people compliment someone—“You did a great job!” or “You are a good student”—people will reply “Thank you.” But in China, people frequently say instead “No, no, no, I am not that good” or “I still need to work harder.” Here again, the different answers indicate different cultures! This “modesty

behavior” has been encouraged since ancient times in China. We always are told that what we’ve learned is not enough, that there is still much more to learn, and how important it is to be a humble person. Chinese also believe “Pride leads to loss while modesty brings benefit,” or 谦受益满招损 **Qiān shòu yì, mǎn zhāo sǔn** in Chinese.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What are the four mythical creatures—key spiritual symbols—of ancient China?
- ❷ What are the twelve symbolic animals of historic Chinese astronomy and astrology?

## See you later!

Here we are at the end of Chapter 5. Do you have any idea how many Chinese words and terms you have already learned and how many useful sentences you can speak? You may not believe it, but you’ve learned 38 new words in Chapter 5 alone. Cumulatively, in Chapters 1 to 5, you have learned about 229 new words and many useful sentences, and a number of Chinese idioms, sayings, poems, culture tips and customs. Are you excited about your progress? I am very proud of you!

In the next chapter, you will learn how to discuss the weather, among other things. See you soon!

# CHAPTER 6

## 第六章

Dì liù zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Weather 天气 Tiān qì

All over the world, it's human nature: everyone wants to know how the weather is. Jack plans to visit some places in China with

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

his friends. He needs to check the weather before they go.

You will learn how to talk about weather in this chapter. While you're at it you will learn some Chinese customs related to weather. I'll also explain a few more things you need to know when you are in China.

Let's get started.

Most mornings, you want to know what the weather is like before you go out, right? Let's start to learn how to find that out in Chinese.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. When you're satisfied with how you handle all these words and sentences, move on to the Notes.



Jack: How is the weather today?

**Jīn tiān tiān qì zěn me yàng?**

今天天气怎么样?

Lily: It's not very good.

**Bù zěn me yàng.**

不怎么样。



Jack: What do you mean “not very good”?

**Shén me shì “bù zěn me yàng”?**

什么是“不怎么样”?

Lily: It's a little cloudy.

**Tiān qì yǒu diǎn yīn.**

天气有点阴。

Jack: Will it rain?

**Huì xià yǔ ma?**

会下雨吗?

Lily: It's possible.

**Yǒu kě néng.**

有可能。

Jack: Check the weather forecast.

**Kàn kan tiān qì yù bào.**

看看天气预报。

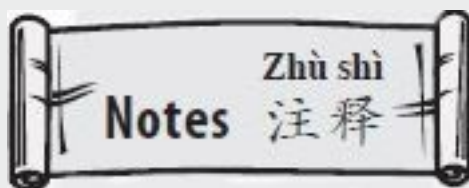
Lily: Okay.

**Hǎo de.**

好的。

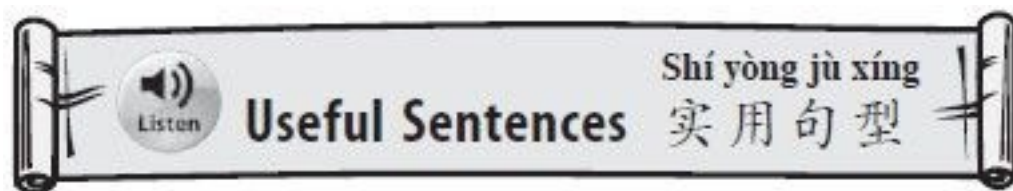


天气 tiān qì	weather
今天 jīn tiān	today
点 diǎn	a little
阴 yīn	cloudy
会 huì	will
下雨 xià yǔ	rain
看看 kàn kan	look at
预报 yù bào	forecast
怎么样 zěn me yàng	how





- ① The phrase 怎么样 **zěn me yàng** is translated into English as “how” and is frequently used in daily communication. A few examples are “天气怎么样? **Tiān qì zěn me yàng?** (How is the weather?)” and “你感觉怎么样啊? **Nǐ gǎn jué zěn me yàng ā?** (How do you feel?)” You can easily form its antonym. Just add 不 **bù** (“not”) in front of 怎么样 **zěn me yàng**, to create 不怎么样 **bù zěn me yàng**. In English, this phrase can be literally translated as “not very good” or “not so good.”
- ② The verb 会 **huì** means different things depending on the situation. In this chapter, it expresses a possibility, as in: “会下雨吗? **Huì xià yǔ ma?** (Will it rain?)”



You want to talk about the weather fluently, right? Try practicing these key sentences.

**Jīn tiān tiān qì zěn me yàng?**

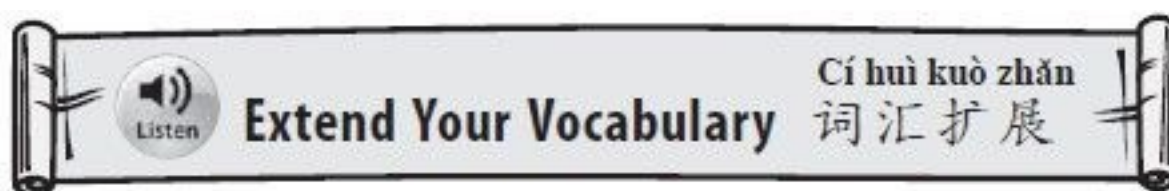
今天天气怎么样? (How is the weather today?)

**Huì xià yǔ ma?**

会下雨吗? (Is it going to rain?)

**Kàn kan tiān qì yù bào.**

看看天气预报。 (Check the weather forecast.)



Here are words that describe different kinds of weather. Best to be prepared!

<b>qíng tiān</b> 晴天 sunny	<b>yīn tiān</b> 阴天 cloudy	<b>shǎn diàn</b> 闪电 lightning	<b>jù fēng</b> 飓风 hurricane
<b>fēng</b> 风 wind	<b>duō yún</b> 多云 cloudy	<b>xià yǔ</b> 下雨 rain	<b>xià xuě</b> 下雪 snow

In **Dialog 1** we covered some weather talk; now let's learn a little more.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2**, then follow along to speak each sentence before moving on to the Notes.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*



Jack: What does the weather forecast say?

**Tiān qì yù bào zěn me shuō?**

天气预报怎么说?

Lily: It'll be cloudy with a shower in the morning.

**Shàng wǔ yīn tiān, yǒu zhèn yǔ.**

上午阴天，有阵雨。

Jack: How about in the afternoon?

**Xià wǔ ne?**

下午呢?

Lily: There will be medium to heavy rain in the afternoon.

**Xià wǔ yǒu zhōng yǔ dào dà yǔ.**

下午有中雨到大雨。

Jack: When will the rain be over?

**Yǔ shén me shí hòu huì tíng?**

雨什么时候会停?

Lily: Tonight.

**Jīn tiān yè lǐ.**

今天夜里。

Jack: How's the weather tomorrow?

**Míng tiān tiān qì hǎo ma?**

明天天气好吗?

Lily: It'll be sunny tomorrow.

**Míng tiān shì qíng tiān.**

明天是晴天。



上午 shàng wǔ	morning
阴天 yīn tiān	cloudy
阵雨 zhèn yǔ	shower
下午 xià wǔ	afternoon
中雨 zhōng yǔ	medium rain

大雨 dà yǔ	heavy rain
时候 shí hòu	time
什么时候 shén me shí hòu	when
停 tíng	stop
夜里 yè lǐ	night
明天 míng tiān	tomorrow
晴天 qíng tiān	sunny



- ① The word 时候 shí hòu means “time,” and 什么时候 shén me shí hòu means “when.” Pay attention to the difference. Look again at what Jack said in the dialog: “雨什么时候会停? Yǔ shén me shí hòu huì tíng? (When will the rain stop?)”
- ② In this chapter, you’ve seen that some question sentences contain the word 呢 ne or 吗 ma, and some don’t. Generally speaking, Chinese do use 呢 ne or 吗 ma at the end of questions. But sometimes people omit them. Here’s an example: “今天天气怎么样? Jīn tiān tiān qì zěn me yàng? (How is the weather today?)”



Try to memorize the following sentences. Even if the weather doesn't improve, your conversation will.

**Xià wǔ yǒu zhōng yǔ dào dà yǔ.**

下午有中雨到大雨。

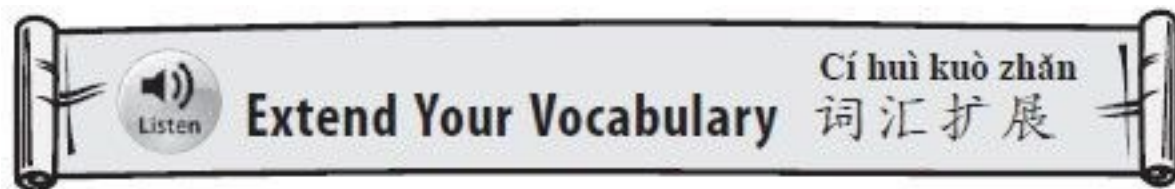
(There will be medium to heavy rain in the afternoon.)

**Jīn tiān shì qíng tiān.**

今天是晴天。(It's a sunny day today.)

**Yǔ shén me shí hòu huì tíng?**

雨什么时候会停?(When will the rain stop?)



Here are words describing different types of rain and snow. Isn't it interesting to know more? Enjoy!

<b>zhèn yǔ</b> 阵雨 shower	<b>léi zhèn yǔ</b> 雷阵雨 thunderstorm	<b>bào fēng yǔ</b> 暴风雨 storm
<b>dà yǔ</b> 大雨 heavy rain	<b>xiǎo xuě</b> 小雪 light snow	<b>dà xuě</b> 大雪 heavy snow



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - www.ebook-converter.com\*\*\*\*\*





Jīn tiān shì qíng tiān.

1. 今天 是 晴 天。

Míng tiān yǒu dà yǔ.

2. 明 天 有 大 雨。

Shàng wǔ shì yīn tiān.

• 上 午 是 阴 天。

Míng tiān huì xià yǔ.

• 明 天 会 下 雨。

Xià wǔ yǒu zhèn yǔ.

• 下 午 有 阵 雨。

Wǎn shàng yǒu bào fēng yǔ.

• 晚 上 有 暴 风 雨。

Jīn tiān shàng wǔ yǒu xiǎo xuě.

• 今 天 上 午 有 小 雪。

Míng tiān huì yǒu dà fēng ma?

• 明 天 会 有 大 风 吗？

Xuǎn zé lián xiàn

## B. Connect the Sentences 选择连线

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) How is the weather today?

a) Shàng wǔ yǒu xiǎo xuě

2) What does the weather forecast say?

b) Míng tiān huì xià yǔ ma

3) Will it rain tomorrow?

c) Jīn tiān tiān qì zěn me yàng

4) There will be a snow shower in the morning.

d) Tiān qì yù bào zěn me shuō

Kàn tú shuō zhōng wén

## C. See Pictures and Speak Chinese

看图说中文

Practice saying these common weather forecast terms out loud.



cloudy  
yīn tiān  
阴天



rainy  
yǔ tiān  
雨天



sunny  
qíng tiān  
晴天



change from sunny to cloudy  
qíng zhuǎn duō yún  
晴转多云



snowy  
xuě tiān  
雪天

Fān yì

## D. Translate 翻译

Translate the following sentences into pinyin.

1) How is the weather tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_

2) It'll be sunny this afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_

3) What does the weather forecast say?

---

4) There'll be a shower tomorrow morning.

---

Zhōng wén huā xù

## TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮

### The Special Qualities of Bamboo

One of the favorite plants of the Chinese is bamboo (竹 zhú). You can see bamboo depicted in centuries of Chinese paintings, porcelain, cloth, paper fans, tea pots, books, and more. You may also notice that the Chinese grow bamboo not only outside, but also inside their houses and buildings.



Bamboo, which is technically a grass, has a unique

structure and appearance. It has a lot of joints, a hollow center and an upright, straight-growing stalk with green leaves. Chinese like to relate the feature of its hollow center to “modesty,” a characteristic of a good person; they link its joints with the quality of “integrity”; and they compliment its upright appearance as being like the manner of “gentlemen.” Bamboo is a fast-growing plant and can survive and flourish in cold weather. Like bamboo, pine trees and plum flowers are also able to survive in harsh and cold weather; Chinese admire all three symbols very much and call them “Three Strong Figures in Cold Weather” (岁寒三友 **suì hán sān yǒu**).

You probably know that pandas like to eat bamboo shoots, stems and leaves. People also like to eat bamboo shoots. You may have eaten some in Chinese restaurants. Bamboo is used in traditional Chinese medicine. Recently, it has been used as a new organic cloth fiber in China. It is used in housing construction too. In southern China especially, you’ll find many houses, pavilions, bridges, and floors made of bamboo. Bamboo is used to make baskets, bags, frames and handcrafts. Even some traditional Chinese musical instruments, the 笛子 **dí zǐ** and 箫 **xiāo**, are made of bamboo.

## For Your Enjoyment

These idioms and a saying are related to weather and nature, which you can see from the Chinese characters. But literal translations into English would not capture their meanings. The meanings behind these combinations of the characters imply the

relationship between nature and humanity. All these idioms originated with famous Chinese philosophers, and they are widely known by Chinese and by some Americans: Secretary of State Hillary Clinton cited the idiom 风雨同舟 **Fēng yǔ tóng zhōu** in her speech when she visited China.



风雨同舟 **Fēng yǔ tóng zhōu** (an idiom): To fight in heavy wind and thunderstorms side by side on the same boat. *(It implies to overcome hardships together.)*

天人合一 **Tiān rén hé yī** (an idiom): Nature and human unite into one.

天时、地利、人和 **Tiān shí, dì lì, rén hé** (a saying): Right time, right location and harmony.

This poem relates to weather and natural springtime beauty. It is very famous in China. Many people can recite it; even some foreigners who study Chinese know it. You can join them!



## SPRING DAWN

by Meng Hao Ran

I awake lighthearted in this spring dawn,  
The chirping of the dawn birds is heard everywhere.  
During the night,  
the wind blew and the rain pattered.  
He's thinking drowsily,  
"A lot of petals must have fallen."

Chūn xiǎo

春 晓

Mèng Hào Rán

孟 浩 然

Chūn	mián	bù	jué	xiǎo,
春	眠	不	觉	晓，
chù	chù	wén	tí	niǎo.
处	处	闻	啼	鸟。
Yè	lái	fēng	yǔ	shēng,
夜	来	风	雨	声，
huā	luò	zhī	duō	shǎo?
花	落	知	多	少？

## Suggestions



✍ In the heat of summer, the cold of winter, windy weather, or other circumstances, a lot of people like to wear a hat. People buy hats with different styles and colors for different situations. However, one hat color has to be avoided by Chinese men: green. Why? In Chinese, the term for a man whose wife is having an affair with another man is 戴绿帽子 **dài lǜ mào zi** (“wearing a green hat”). Obviously that situation is extremely shameful and humiliating, so men avoid wearing green hats. If you’re a male visitor in China, it is better for you not to wear a green hat either, in order to avoid misinterpretation. You don’t want people to make fun of you, do you? And now you also understand why you must never ever offer a green hat to a Chinese male friend. Please remember that!

✍ An umbrella is used to protect people from getting wet in the rain. Simple enough, right? But, according to traditional Chinese culture, if it rains at an outdoor wedding ceremony, everyone at the wedding may hold umbrellas except for the bride and the groom. They may not hold an umbrella no matter how heavy the rain is. This is because the pronunciation of “holding umbrella,” 打伞 **dǎ sǎn** in Chinese, is similar to that of “breaking up,” 打散 **dǎ sàn**. Though the two words 伞 **sǎn** and 散 **sàn** have completely different meanings, because of their similar pronunciations the Chinese view the holding of an umbrella as bad luck for the new couple. Therefore, no one should give the bride and the groom an umbrella as a wedding gift. And be ready to hold an umbrella over the bride and groom, if you’re their wedding



guest on a rainy day.

## **Do You Know?**

- ❶ Where can you go to see pandas in China?
- ❷ What is the name of the special paper used for Chinese calligraphy and painting?

## **See you later!**

You have learned 29 new words in this chapter. Good work. There certainly are a lot of phrases, sayings and customs related to weather, aren't there? Many aspects of Chinese culture relate to weather and nature, as we've seen.

Now, I would like to have a cup of tea. How about you? Let's take a break!

# CHAPTER 7

## 第七章

Dì qī zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Numbers 数字 Shù zì

When you know how to say numbers in Chinese, you will find it's

much easier to go places and do things by yourself in China. So Jack wisely asks Lily to teach him to say numbers.

In this chapter, you'll not only learn how to count in Chinese, but also about the need to pay attention to some numbers that are used differently depending on the situation. And there are measure words that offer some "magic" for beginners learning Chinese. You'll find that numbers also play important roles in Chinese culture.

So let's learn to count.

Okay, here we go; let the counting begin.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Next read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you feel comfortable with the dialog, move on to the Notes.



Jack: How do you say numbers in Chinese?

**Shù zì yòng zhōng wén zěn me shuō?**

数字用中文怎么说?

Lily: Let me teach you.

**Wǒ lái jiāo nǐ.**

我来教你。

Jack: How do you say from one to five?

**Yī dào wǔ zěn me shuō?**

一到五怎么说?

Lily: One, two, three, four, five.

**Yī, èr, sān, sì, wǔ.**

一、二、三、四、五。

Jack: How about six to ten?

**Liù dào shí ne?**

六到十呢?

Lily: Six, seven, eight, nine, ten.

**Liù, qī, bā, jiǔ, shí.**

六、七、八、九、十。

Jack: How do you say from eleven to nineteen?

**Shí yī dào shí jiǔ zěn me shuō?**

十一到十九怎么说?

Lily: Eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen,  
seventeen, eighteen, nineteen.

**Shí yī, shí èr, shí sān, shí sì, shí wǔ, shí liù,**

十一、十二、十三、十四、十五、十六、

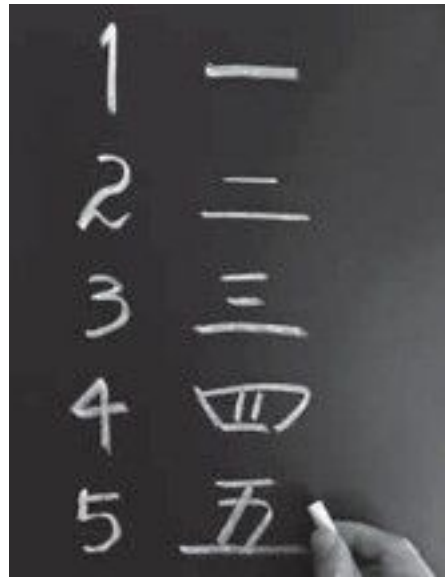
shí qī, shí bā, shí jiǔ.

十七、十八、十九。

You speak very well!

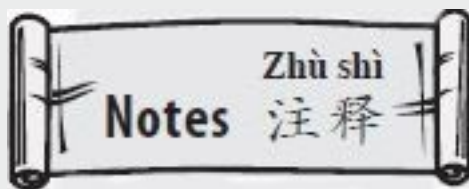
Nǐ shuō dé hěn hǎo!

你说得很好!



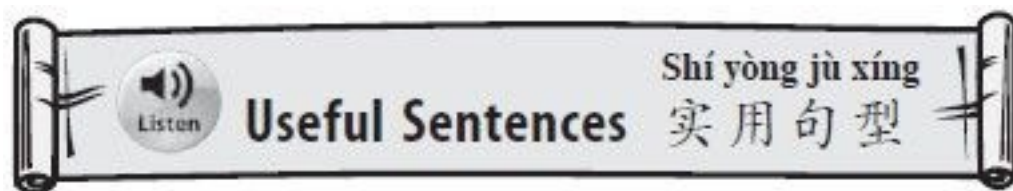
数字 shù zì	number
用 yòng	use
中文 zhōng wén	Chinese
怎么 zěn me	how
说 shuō	say/speak
教 jiāo	teach

到 dào	to
一 yī	one
二 èr	two
三 sān	three
四 sì	four
五 wǔ	five
六 liù	six
七 qī	seven
八 bā	eight
九 jiǔ	nine
十 shí	ten
十一 shí yī	eleven
十九 shí jiǔ	nineteen
得 dé	auxiliary word



- ① 一 Yī, one, is pronounced as “yī” in Chinese most of the time. But you may also hear Chinese say “yāo” instead, especially when they’re saying address or phone numbers. Address and phone numbers are usually said as separate individual digits in Chinese.

- ② 二 Èr, two, is pronounced as “èr”. But, when you use “two” before a measure word to describe the quantity of objects, the word for “two” is 两 liǎng—liǎng instead of èr. For instance, “two friends” should be said or read as “liǎng gè péng yǒu,” because “two” here is placed before the measure word “gè” to indicate “two people.” Measure words are an interesting feature of Chinese, and we’ll learn about them in a little while. For now, just remember that there are two ways to say “two.”



For the following sentences, keep in mind that you can also substitute any appropriate name, such as “Peter” or “Nancy,” in place of the “他 tā” or “她 tā.”

**Shù zì yòng zhōng wén zěn me shuō?**

数字用中文怎么说?

(How do you say numbers in Chinese?)

**Tā shuō dé hǎo ma?**

他说得好吗? (How well does he speak?)

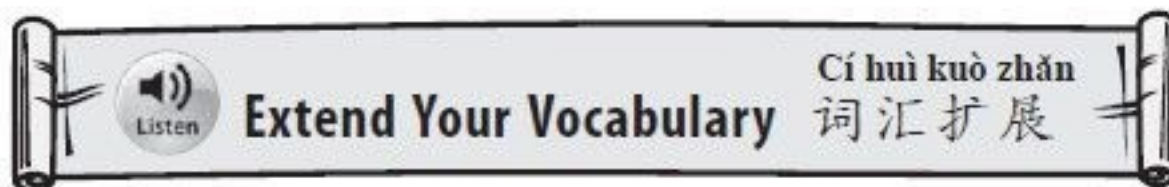
**Tā shuō dé hěn hǎo.**

他说得很好。 (He speaks very well.)

**Tā shuō dé bù hǎo.**

她说得不好。 (She doesn't speak well.)





Notice that there are multiple ways to say the phrase “Chinese language.”

<b>zhōng wén</b> 中文 Chinese	<b>hàn yǔ</b> 汉语 Chinese	<b>pǔ tōng huà</b> 普通话 Mandarin	<b>guǎng dōng huà/yuè yǔ</b> 广东话/粤语 Cantonese
---------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---



Counting numbers in Chinese is similar to doing it in English, in that the basic single-digit numbers are used to create the words for multiple-digit numbers, the same way that “seven” relates to

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

“seventeen” and “seventy.” Once you know how to say the basic numbers, the higher numbers won’t be difficult for you.

## A. Basic Single Numbers

Number	Chinese	Pinyin	English
0	零	líng	zero
1	一	yī	one
2	二	èr	two
3	三	sān	three
4	四	sì	four
5	五	wǔ	five
6	六	liù	six
7	七	qī	seven
8	八	bā	eight
9	九	jiǔ	nine

## B. Two-Digit Numbers

The basic word you need to use for two-digit numbers in Chinese is 十 **shí** which equals ten (10). There are three steps to learning two-digit numbers.

1. Basic multiples of tens (10, 20, 30, ...90): You count like this:  
a basic single number + **shí**.

In English, “-ty” represents basic tens. In Chinese, “**shí**”

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*

functions like “-ty.”

Number	Chinese	Pinyin	English
10	十	shí	ten
20	二十	èr-shí	twenty
30	三十	sān-shí	thirty
40	四十	sì-shí	forty
50	五十	wǔ-shí	fifty
60	六十	liù-shí	sixty
70	七十	qī-shí	seventy
80	八十	bā-shí	eighty
90	九十	jiǔ-shí	ninety

2. From 11 to 19: You count like this: **shí** + a basic single number.

In English, “-teen” represents ten. In Chinese, “**shí**” functions that way.

Number	Chinese	Pinyin	English
11	十一	shí-yī	eleven
12	十二	shí-èr	twelve
13	十三	shí-sān	thirteen
14	十四	shí-sì	fourteen
15	十五	shí-wǔ	fifteen

16	十六	<u>shí-liù</u>	<u>sixteen</u>
17	十七	<u>shí-qī</u>	<u>seventeen</u>
18	十八	<u>shí-bā</u>	<u>eighteen</u>
19	十九	<u>shí-jiǔ</u>	<u>nineteen</u>

---

3. Other tens with ones (21, 32, ...99): You count like this: a basic multiple of tens + a single number, similar to the way things work in English.

Number	Chinese	Pinyin	English
21	二十一	<u>èr-shí-yī</u>	<u>twenty-one</u>
32	三十二	<u>sān-shí-èr</u>	<u>thirty-two</u>
43	四十三	<u>sì-shí-sān</u>	<u>forty-three</u>
54	五十四	<u>wǔ-shí-sì</u>	<u>fifty-four</u>
65	六十五	<u>liù-shí-wǔ</u>	<u>sixty-five</u>
76	七十六	<u>qī-shí-liù</u>	<u>seventy-six</u>
87	八十七	<u>bā-shí-qī</u>	<u>eighty-seven</u>
99	九十九	<u>jiǔ-shí-jiǔ</u>	<u>ninety-nine</u>

---

## C. Three-Digit Numbers

The basic word to use for three-digit numbers in Chinese is 百 **bǎi** which means “hundred.”

1. Basic numbers of hundreds (100, 200, ...900): You count like

this: a basic single number + **bǎi**.

2. Hundreds with tens (450, 561, ...999): You count like this: a basic number of hundreds + a two-digit number.
3. Hundreds with ones only (301, etc.): You count like this: a basic number of hundreds + “**líng**” + a single-digit number.

Number	Chinese	Pinyin	English
100	一百	<u>yī-bǎi</u>	<u>one hundred</u>
200	二百	<u>èr-bǎi</u>	<u>two hundred</u>
301	三百零一	<u>sān-bǎi-líng-yī</u>	<u>three hundred one</u>
450	四百五十	<u>sì-bǎi-wǔ-shí</u>	<u>four hundred</u> fifty
561	五百六十一	<u>wǔ-bǎi-liù-shí-yī</u>	<u>five hundred</u> sixty-one
735	七百三十五	<u>qī-bǎi-sān-shí-wǔ</u>	<u>seven hundred</u> thirty-five
999	九百九十九	<u>jiǔ-bǎi-jiǔ-shí-jiǔ</u>	<u>nine hundred</u> ninety-nine

## D. Big Numbers

The basic word to use for four-digit numbers in Chinese is 千 **qiān** which means “thousand”; and the basic word for five-digit numbers in Chinese is 万 **wàn** which means “ten thousand.”

Number	Chinese	Pinyin	English
1,000	一千	yī-qiān	one thousand
10,000	一万	yī-wàn	ten thousand
100,000	十万	shí-wàn	one hundred thousand
1,000,000	一百万	yī-bǎi-wàn	one million
100,000,000	一亿	yī yì	a hundred million

Shù zì liàn xí

## E. Practice Numbers 数字练习

To fluently speak numbers in Chinese is essential, so it's a very important thing for beginners to learn correctly. Here's a list of some different numbers for you to practice, covering all of the number categories you learned above. Practice by making up your own lists, too, and by saying in Chinese the numbers you see throughout your day.

- 56      wǔ shí liù  
五 十 六
- 206      èr bǎi líng liù  
二 百 零 六
- sān bǎi yī shí sì  
三 百 一 十 四

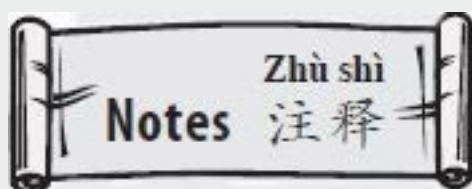
- 314                      三 百 一 十 四  
  
wǔ bǎi jiǔ shí qī
- 597                      五 百 九 十 七  
  
sì qiān sān bǎi sān shí èr
- 4,332                    四 千 三 百 三 十 二  
  
qī qiān èr bǎi líng jiǔ
- 7,209                    七 千 二 百 零 九  
  
sān wàn yī qiān wǔ bǎi bā shí liù
- 31,586                   三 万 一 千 五 百 八 十 六  
  
liù wàn èr qiān yī bǎi yī shí sān
- 62,113                   六 万 二 千 一 百 一 十 三  
  
sì shí wǔ wàn èr qiān bā bǎi jiǔ shí yī
- 452,891                   四 十 五 万 二 千 八 百 九 十 一  
  
bā bǎi wǔ shí liù wàn sān qiān qī bǎi sì shí jiǔ
- 8,563,749              八 百 五 十 六 万 三 千 七 百 四 十 九  
  
yī qiān wǔ bǎi èr shí sān wàn sì qiān liù bǎi bā shí qī
- 一 千 五 百 二 十 三 万 四 千 六 百



• 15,234,687    八 十 七

sān yì yī qiān sì bǎi èr shí wǔ wàn liù qiān  
jiǔ bǎi qī shí bā

• 314,256,978    三 亿 一 千 四 百 二 十 五 万 六 千 九  
百 七 十 八



- ① When you see a zero between two numbers, you need to add 零 **líng** in order to say the whole number. For example, “206” is 二百零六 **èr bǎi líng liù** and “7,209” is 七千二百零九 **qī qiān èr bǎi líng jiǔ**.
- ② When the number 1 is present between two numbers, such as in “314,” you need to say 三百一十四 **sān bǎi yī shí sì**, not 三百十四 **sān bǎi shí sì**.

You’ve learned how to say basic numbers in Chinese. Now, you can practice how to use numbers to ask questions.

Listen to **New Words 2** of **Chapter 7** on your audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable

with **Dialog 2**, move on to the Notes.



Jack: What is this number?

**Zhè shì jǐ?**

这是几?

Lily: This is three.

**Zhè shì sān.**

这是三。

Jack: Is that nineteen?

**Nà shì shí jiǔ ma?**

那是十九吗?

Lily: No, it isn't. It's thirty-seven.

**Bú shì. Nà shì sān shí qī.**

不是。那是三十七。

Jack: And this number?

**Zhè gè shù zì ne?**

这个数字呢?

**Zhè gè shù zì shì yī bǎi èr shí wǔ.**

这个 数字 是 一百 二十 五。

Jack: How do you say that number?

**Nà gè shù zì zěn me shuō?**

那个 数字 怎么 说?

Lily: That is one thousand three hundred sixty-eight.

**Nà gè shù zì shì yī qiān sān bǎi liù shí bā.**

那个 数字 是 一千 三百 六十 八。



0.06	6223	ST东航	1.44
---	27720	三峡水利	9.70
---	12986	西宁特钢	10.50
0.18	181057	中国卫星	32.90
0.03	24812	长江投资	9.73
0.04	31060	浙江东方	11.25
0.02	87801	郑州煤电	11.88
0.02	53642	宏图高科	16.24
0.06	65312	兰花科创	38.58
0.12	65156	铁龙物流	11.04



这是 zhè shì

this is

几 jǐ

how many

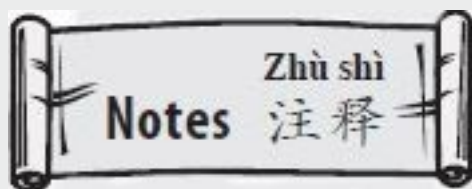
那 nà

that

那是 nà shì

that is

那是 nà shì	that is
不是 bú shì	is not
这个 zhè gè	this
那个 nà gè	that
三十七 sān shí qī	thirty-seven
一百二十五 yī bǎi èr shí wǔ	one hundred twenty-five
一千三百六十八 yī qiān sān bǎi liù shí bā	one thousand three hundred sixty-eight



- ① 怎么 Zěn me means “how” or “how to” in English. It is an often-used question word. To ask a specific question, usually there is a verb following 怎么 zěn me. Look at “Zěn me shuō jiǔ?” Here, “shuō” (to say) is a verb following “zěn me” to ask “How to say the number nine?”
- ② A measure word is a required bridge between a number and a noun in Chinese. In English, only “non-countable nouns” have measure words in front of them, such as “a loaf of bread,” “two slices of cheese.” In Chinese, all nouns require measure words. For example, if you want to say “I have one son,” you should say “Wǒ yǒu yī gè ér zi”. Here, “gè” is a measure word between “yī” (a number) and “ér zi” (a

noun). In Chinese, different measure words are used to match different categories of nouns. Among them, “gè” is a “magic word” that can be used in many situations.



Here are some basic question formats and answer formats to learn.

**Zhè shì jǐ? Zhè shì bā.**

这是几? 这是八。

(What is this number? This is eight.)

---

**Nà shì shí liù ma? Nà shì jiǔ shí liù.**

那是十六吗? 那是九十六。

(Is that sixteen? That is ninety-six.)

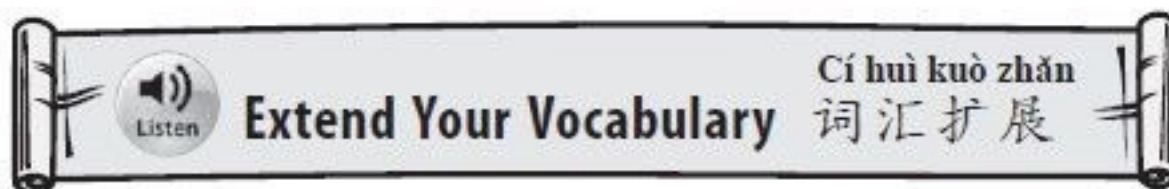
---

**Zhè gè shù zì shì jiǔ, nà gè shù zì shì wǔ.**

这个数字是九, 那个数字是五。

(This number is nine and that one is five.)

---



Pay attention to these extension words. They are not hard to say and are very useful!

<b>zěn me shuō</b> 怎么说 how to say	<b>zěn me jiāo</b> 怎么教 how to teach	<b>zěn me xiě</b> 怎么写 how to write	<b>zěn me dú</b> 怎么读 how to read
<b>zhè shì</b> 这是 this is	<b>zhè bú shì</b> 这不是 this is not	<b>nà shì</b> 那是 that is	<b>nà bú shì</b> 那不是 that is not



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.

For each phrase, add Chinese words you know to make a complete sentence. See how many different sentences you can say for each line!

1) This is \_\_\_\_\_

**Zhè shì** \_\_\_\_\_

2) That is \_\_\_\_\_

**Nà shì** \_\_\_\_\_

3) This is not \_\_\_\_\_

**Zhè bú shì** \_\_\_\_\_

4) That is not \_\_\_\_\_

**Nà bú shì** \_\_\_\_\_

**Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà**

## **C. Practice a Short Dialog** 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with talking about numbers. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: How do you say this number in Chinese?

**Zhè gè shù zì yòng zhōng wén zěn me shuō?**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



**Zhè shì** \_\_\_\_\_

2) That is \_\_\_\_\_

**Nà shì** \_\_\_\_\_

3) This is not \_\_\_\_\_

**Zhè bú shì** \_\_\_\_\_

4) That is not \_\_\_\_\_

**Nà bú shì** \_\_\_\_\_

**Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà**

## **C. Practice a Short Dialog** 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with talking about numbers. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: How do you say this number in Chinese?

**Zhè gè shù zì yòng zhōng wén zěn me shuō?**

这个数字用中文怎么说?

Y: This number is five hundred seventy-nine.

**Zhè gè shù zì shì wǔ bǎi qī shí jiǔ.**

这个数字是五百七十九。

X: How about that number?

**Nà gè shù zì ne?**

那个 数字呢?

Y: That number is four hundred thirty-six.

**Nà gè shù zì shì sì bǎi sān shí liù.**

那个 数字是四百 三十 六。

X: You speak very well!

**Nǐ shuō dé hěn hǎo!**

你 说得 很好!

Zhōng wén huā xù

## **TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

### **Knowing When to Run Away: *The Art of War***

In the over-4,000-year history of China, there is one book about war strategy that's had a special impact: “孙子兵法 **Sūn zi bīng fǎ**” or, in English, *The Art of War*. It was the first treatise of the military sciences in China.



*The Art of War* was written by Sun Tzu (also called Sun Zi or Sun Wu) during the late sixth century BCE. When Sun Tzu was a commander of the army in the State of Wu, he very strictly disciplined and trained his soldiers, and used the strategies later described in this book to plan his battles and fight his enemies. The victories he achieved made the State of Wu become the strongest military power of that time.

Although this book has only about 6,000 characters and 13 chapters, it is very well known for its teachings on many subjects, such as the function of war, strategies, philosophy, diplomacy, politics, and astronomy. Therefore, the book has been popular in China among everyone from military and political leaders, scholars, and economists, to philosophers, diplomats, and security guards.

In the “孙子兵法 **Sūn zi bīng fǎ**” Sun Tzu listed 36 strategies. One of the most famous is “When you are in a hopeless situation, the best choice is to run away” (三十六计，走为上计 **Sān shí liù jì, zǒu wéi shàng jì**). Another popular one is his emphasis that as a chief commander, “You’ll always achieve victories if you understand your opponent as well as yourself” (知己知彼，百战不殆 **Zhī jǐ zhī bǐ, bǎi zhàn bú dài**).

The strategies and philosophical attitudes of the book are very popular in China and Asia. In recent years (relatively speaking!) it’s been recognized in the world at large, and has been translated into English and other languages.

## For Your Enjoyment

Numbers are not only used for counting, but also often are present in Chinese idioms, sayings, proverbs and poems. You can see some in the Chinese characters of those below. But literal translations into English would not capture the sayings’ meanings. Here I’ve chosen three popular ones to share with you.



三思而行 **Sān sī ěr xíng** (an idiom): To think carefully before taking any actions. (三思 **Sān sī** *here means, literally, to think over three times.*)

四海为家 **Sì hǎi wéi jiā** (an idiom): To take anywhere as a home. (四海 **Sì hǎi** *means, literally, four oceans. It’s used*



## A VILLAGE CHANT

by Shao Kangjie

Walk one, two, or three miles in the countryside,  
Be able to see four or five small villages.  
Six to seven pavilions,  
And eight, nine, maybe ten  
scattered groups of flowers around.

Shān cūn yǒng huái

山村咏怀

Shào Kāng jié

邵康节

Yī	qù	èr	sān	lǐ,
一	去	二	三	里，
yān	cūn	sì	wǔ	jiā.
烟	村	四	五	家。
Tíng	tái	liù	qī	zuò,
亭	台	六	七	座，
bā	jiǔ	shí	zhī	huā.
八	九	十	只	花。

## Suggestions

 Do you have any favorite numbers? Most Chinese like 6 and

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*





## A VILLAGE CHANT

by Shao Kangjie

Walk one, two, or three miles in the countryside,  
Be able to see four or five small villages.  
Six to seven pavilions,  
And eight, nine, maybe ten  
scattered groups of flowers around.

Shān cūn yǒng huái

山村咏怀

Shào Kāng jié

邵康节


Yī	qù	èr	sān	lǐ,
一	去	二	三	里，
yān	cūn	sì	wǔ	jiā.
烟	村	四	五	家。
Tíng	tái	liù	qī	zuò,
亭	台	六	七	座，
bā	jiǔ	shí	zhī	huā.
八	九	十	只	花。


## Suggestions

 Do you have any favorite numbers? Most Chinese like 6 and


\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

8. That's because the number 6 is written as 六 **liù** in Chinese which is seen in the Chinese idiom “六六大顺 **Liù liù dà shùn.**” This idiom means “everything goes the way you expect.” The number 8 sounds closer to 发 **fā** in Chinese. And the word “发 **fā**” is one of the characters in a Chinese phrase “恭喜发财 **Gōng xǐ fā cái**”—“Congratulations for getting rich.” People say this phrase frequently at the grand opening of a business, during occasions with business associates or during the period of Chinese New Year.

 If you go to China, you may notice that lots of license plate numbers, phone numbers, house numbers, and store addresses contain 6 or 8. How do people get numbers they want from government agencies? People often pay extra money to get a combination of numbers with 6 or 8 in it. Numbers also play an important role in China's large events. For example, for the 2008 Beijing Olympics, the date and the time of the opening ceremony were specially chosen: 8:00 p.m. on August 8, 2008 (8/8/2008). Of course, the number “8” here did not literally mean to get rich; it symbolized good luck.

 There are some numbers that most Chinese *don't* like. For example, the number 4. Four is pronounced as “**sì**” in Chinese. This pronunciation is similar to the word “die” or “death” in Chinese, which is not lucky. Therefore, people try to avoid using 4 as much as possible, especially not in their house number, license plate number, wedding date, the date of moving to a new place, and so on. Normally people are fine with using the number 3, except that they avoid “3” when they

send a wedding gift. They choose an even number instead, because “3” in Chinese is pronounced as “**sān**” and that resembles another Chinese word “**散 sàn**” which means “break up.” Is it all a little too much for you? Don’t worry, I just want you to have some idea about Chinese number attitudes.

 In America, 911 is the phone number for emergency help in all situations. But in China, different emergency situations have different phone numbers. For example, if you need to go to a hospital urgently, you’d need to dial 120; if you have a fire at your home, you’d dial 119; if you have a car accident, you’d dial 122.

## **Do You Know?**

- ❶ What are four still-famous works of fiction written during the Ming (1368–1644) and the Qing (1644–1911) dynasties?
- ❷ What are the four great folk-legend “love stories” in China?

## **See you later!**

Wow! You’ve learned numbers from “one, two, three” to a hundred, a thousand and even more. You have learned 29 new words. You’re now aware of some ways that numbers are woven into Chinese culture.

Now that you can say numbers in Chinese, in the next chapter you’ll learn how to use them to say times and dates.



Let's get a little bit of fresh air, and I'll see you soon!

# CHAPTER 8

## 第八章

Dì bā zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



# Time and Date 时间和日期 Shí jiān hé rì qī

Jack's Chinese friend Xiao Zhu invites Jack to a party. They discuss the time and date of the party. From their conversation you'll get an idea of how to say the time, date, week, month, and year in Chinese. Actually, it is easier to say these in Chinese than in English.

Ready? Let's try it!

How do you say "Time and Date" in Chinese? Let's begin with those very words.

First, listen to **New Words 1** on your recording. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Zhu: What day is it today?

**Jīn tiān xīng qī jǐ?**

今天星期几?

Jack: Today is Wednesday.

**Jīn tiān shì xīng qī sān.**

今天是星期三。

Zhu: What is the date today?

**Jīn tiān shì jǐ hào?**

今天 是 几号?

Jack: Today is October 5th.

**Jīn tiān shì shí yuè wǔ hào.**

今天 是 十月 五号。

Zhu: It's Thursday tomorrow.

**Míng tiān shì xīng qī sì.**

明天 是 星期四。

Jack: It's Friday the day after tomorrow.

**Hòu tiān shì xīng qī wǔ.**

后天 是 星期五。

Zhu: Will you have time on Saturday?

**Xīng qī liù nǐ yǒu shí jiān ma?**

星期六 你 有 时间 吗?

Jack: Yes, I will.

**Wǒ yǒu shí jiān.**

我 有 时间。

Zhu: Would you like to come to our party?

**Cān jiā wǒ men de jù huì hǎo ma?**

参加我们的聚会好吗?

Jack: Yes, I'd be glad to.

**Hǎo a!**

好啊!



时间 shí jiān

time

和 hé

and

日期 rì qī

date

是 shì	to be
星期 xīng qī	week
月 yuè	month
号 hào	date
后天 hòu tiān	the day after tomorrow
参加 cān jiā	attend
啊 a	ah



- ① The Chinese week starts with Monday. You say “Monday” through “Saturday” by putting “星期 xīng qī” before the day’s number, yī, èr, sān, sì, wǔ, or liù, like 星期一 xīng qī yī (Monday)... 星期六 xīng qī liù (Saturday). Only the seventh day does not use a number. Instead, it is written and read as 星期天 xīng qī tiān (literally, “Heaven day”) or 星期日 xīng qī rì (Sunday).
- ② The name of each month is constructed by adding the numbers from 1 to 12 before the word “月 yuè” (month). Here’s a list of the twelve months in both English and Chinese for comparison.

yī yuè èr yuè sān yuè sì yuè wǔ yuè liù yuè

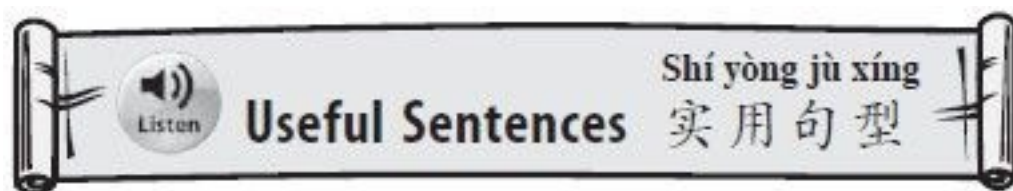
一月 二月 三月 四月 五月 六月

January February March April May June

qī yuè bā yuè jiǔ yuè shí yuè shí yī yuè shí èr yuè

七月 八月 九月 十月 十一月 十二月

July August September October November December



In daily life you'll often need these sentences.

**Jīn tiān shì xīng qī jǐ?**

今天 是 星期几? (What day is it today?)

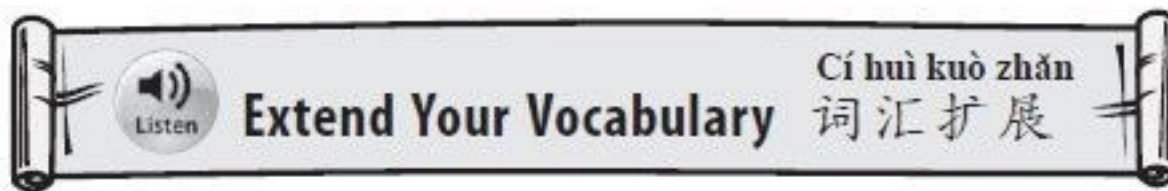
**Jīn tiān shì jǐ hào?**

今天 是 几号? (What is the date today?)

**Nǐ yǒu shí jiān ma?**

你 有 时 间 吗? (Do you have time?)





Who could skip learning these? It may be the first word you think of when you get up in the morning.

xīng qī yī 星期 一 Monday	xīng qī èr 星期 二 Tuesday	xīng qī sān 星期三 Wednesday	xīng qī sì 星期 四 Thursday	xīng qī wǔ 星期 五 Friday	xīng qī liù 星期 六 Saturday	xīng qī rì 星期 日 Sunday	xīng qī tiān 星期 天 Heaven day
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---

You've just learned how to say the date, week and month. Now we are going to learn how to say the time.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

**New Words 2**, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Jack: What time is it now?

**Xiàn zài jǐ diǎn?**

现在几点?

Lily: It's six forty-five.

**Xiàn zài liù diǎn sān kè.**

现在六点三刻。

Jack: What time do you have breakfast?

**Nǐ jǐ diǎn chī zǎo fàn?**

你几点吃早饭?

Lily: I have breakfast at seven thirty.

**Wǒ qī diǎn bàn chī zǎo fàn.**

我七点半吃早饭。

Jack: What time do you go to work?

**Nǐ jǐ diǎn shàng bān?**

你几点上班?

Lily: I go to work at nine o'clock.

**Wǒ jiǔ diǎn shàng bān.**

我九点上班。

Jack: What time do you go home?

**Nǐ jǐ diǎn huí jiā?**

你几点回家?

Lily: I go home at six twenty.

**Wǒ liù diǎn èr shí fēn huí jiā.**

我六点二十分回家。



现在 xiàn zài

now

几点 jǐ diǎn

what time

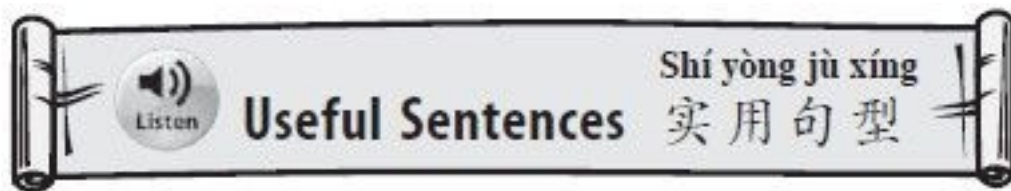
点 diǎn

time/o'clock

刻 kè	quarter
半 bàn	half
分 fēn	minute
吃 chī	to eat
早饭 zǎo fàn	breakfast
上班 shàng bān	go to work
回家 huí jiā	go home



- ① Note that the Chinese, like most people across the world, use “military time.” You can see it in schedules at stations or airports, for example: the next train leaves at “15:30,” not 3:30 p.m.
- ② 点 **Diǎn** means “time” or “o’clock” in this chapter. The word 点 **diǎn** also has other meanings, such as “a little” or “a point” in other situations.
- ③ To say a year in Chinese, simply read each digit before the year. 年 **Nián** means “year” in Chinese. For example, in Chinese, the year 1978 is read as “一九七八年 yī jiǔ qī bā nián”; the year 2011 is read as “二零一一年 èr líng yī yī nián.”



You'll probably use these sentences every day. Try to read each one multiple times, until you know it by heart.

**Xiàn zài jǐ diǎn?**

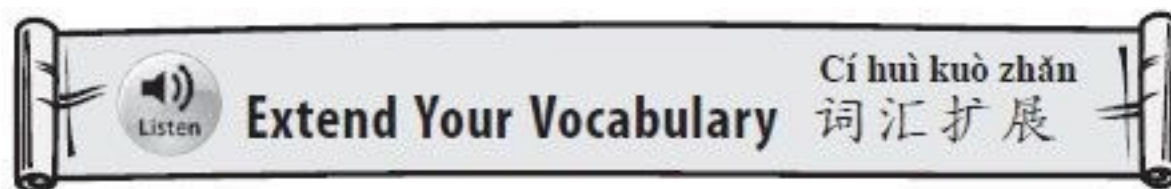
现在几点? (What time is it now?)

**Nǐ jǐ diǎn qǐ chuáng?**

你几点起床? (What time do you get up?)

**Wǒ qī diǎn shàng bān.**

我七点上班。(I go to work at seven o'clock.)



In Chinese there are two ways to say “fifteen minutes.” One is to simply say “15 minutes”; another one is by using 一刻 **yí kè**. Both ways are correct. You can choose whichever is easier for you. Chinese like to say **yī kè** for “15 minutes” and **sān kè** for “45 minutes.” For “30 minutes” they don’t say **liǎng kè**, though—instead it’s 半 **bàn** meaning “half.” Read the following table carefully!

<b>liù diǎn</b> 六点 6:00	<b>liù diǎn wǔ fēn</b> 六点五分 6:05	<b>liù diǎn yī kè</b> 六点一刻 6:15	<b>liù diǎn shí wǔ</b> 六点十五 6:15
<b>liù diǎn bàn</b> 六点半 6:30	<b>liù diǎn sì shí wǔ</b> 六点四十五 6:45	<b>liù diǎn sān kè</b> 六点三刻 6:45	<b>liù diǎn shí fēn</b> 六点十分 6:10



Now let’s check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.





Jīn tiān shì xīng qī yī.  
1. 今天 是 星期一。

Xiàn zài shì yī yuè.  
2. 现在 是 一月。

Xiàn zài jǐ diǎn?  
3. 现在 几点?

Míng tiān shì xīng qī èr.  
• 明天 是 星期二。

Hòu tiān shì xīng qī sān.  
• 后天 是 星期三。

Wǒ xīng qī sì huí měi guó.  
• 我 星期四回 美国。

Tā xīng qī wǔ wǎn shàng lái wǒ jiā.  
• 他 星期五晚 上 来我家。

Xīng qī liù nǐ yǒu shí jiān ma?  
• 星期六你 有 时间 吗?

Xīng qī tiān wǒ yǒu shí jiān.  
• 星期天我 有 时间。

Tā èr yuè qù yīng guó, sān yuè huí lái.  
• 他 二月去 英 国, 三月回来。

Jīn tiān shì liù yuè sān hào.  
• 今天 是 六月三 号。

Bā yuè èr shí hào shì tā de shēng rì.  
• 八月二十 号 是 她的 生日。

Wǒ shì shí èr yuè lái měi guó de.  
• 我是 十二月来 美国 的。

Xiàn zài shì shàng wǔ liù diǎn bàn.  
• 现在 是 上 午 六 点 半。

Xiàn zài shì zhōng wǔ shí èr diǎn.  
• 现在 是 中 午 十二 点。

Xiàn zài shì xià wǔ sān diǎn shí fēn.  
• 现在 是 下 午 三 点 十 分。

Xiàn zài shì wǎn shàng shí diǎn yī kè.  
• 现在 是 晚 上 十 点 一 刻。

Fān yì

## B. Translate 翻译

Translate the following sentences into pinyin.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - www.ebook-converter.com \*\*\*\*\*

- 1) What time is it now?
- 2) I go to work at eight o'clock.
- 3) When do you have lunch?
- 4) What day is today?
- 5) Today is March 20th.

Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà

## C. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words you've learned. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: What day is it today?  
**Jīn tiān shì xīng qī jǐ?**  
今天 是 星期几?

Y: Today is Monday.  
**Jīn tiān shì xīng qī yī.**  
今天 是 星期一。

X: What is the date today?  
**Jīn tiān shì jǐ hào?**

今天 是几号?

Y: Today is the 9th of February.

**Jīn tiān shì èr yuè jiǔ hào.**

今天 是二 月 九 号。

Zhōng wén huā xù

## **TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

### **Chinese Snuff Bottles: from Medicine to Art**

When you are in art galleries or shops in China, you may see artists who are holding a tiny brush to paint pictures on the insides of small glass bottles which are only one or two inches high. Their delicate skill and the beauty of these small bottles may surprise you.



The bottles are called 鼻烟壶 **bí yān hú**, or “snuff bottles” in English. Snuff bottles are the result of an interesting combining of eastern and western cultures. Tobacco was introduced into China from western countries in the late 1500s. It was first smoked in pipes; but smoking tobacco was eventually ruled illegal in China (although stylish members of the upper class still managed to smoke). During the Qing Dynasty (1614–1912) using tobacco in the form of snuff became popular. Again, it started as an upper-class habit; but slowly its use expanded to the rest of the country. Snuff was viewed as a medicine, and was used to treat various pains from migraine headaches to constipation. People found that it was very convenient to carry their snuff around in a small bottle. The use of a bottle was probably also related to the fact that medicines normally came in bottles during that time period.

Snuff bottles are made of a variety of materials including jade, ivory, tortoiseshell, wood, porcelain, ceramic, metal, and glass. Today, snuff bottles are not used for carrying snuff anymore. They’ve become one of the traditional Chinese arts, and a popular collection item. In some museums in Beijing and other cities around the world, you can see exhibits of precious snuff bottles.

## For Your Enjoyment

In China, from ancient times up until now, many sayings, idioms, and proverbs have been recorded about how fast time passes and how people should use their time wisely and well. Here are three of them.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*



日月如梭 **Rì yuè rú suō** (an idiom): Time flies.

只争朝夕 **Zhī zhēng zhāo xī** (an idiom): To use your time efficiently and effectively.

天长地久 **Tiān cháng dì jiǔ** (an idiom): Enduring as the universe.

From spring to autumn, from a flower blooming to a leaf falling, time passes. The following Tang poem describes how beautiful spring is. You might understand the poet's feelings here, and identify with his great nostalgia for his homeland. Dù Fǔ (712–770) was another of the Tang Dynasty's famous poets.



## QUATRAIN (2)

by Du Fu

The white feathers of flying birds are set off  
by the rippling blue waves of the river.  
How I admire this picture!  
On the green mountain,  
the flowers bloom like bits of fire.  
This spring, once more,  
I revel in such glorious scenes.  
What year will I return to again fulfill  
my yearning for this beauty?

Jué jù èr shǒu (qí èr)  
绝句二首(其二)

Dù Fǔ  
杜甫

Jiāng	bì	niǎo	yú	bái,
江	碧	鸟	逾	白，
shān	qīng	huā	yù	rán.
山	青	花	欲	燃。
Jīn	chūn	kàn	yòu	guò,
今	春	看	又	过，
hé	rì	shì	guī	nián?
何	日	是	归	年？



## Suggestions

- 📌 When you plan to give presents to your Chinese friends, remember not to give them a clock! This is because the Chinese pronunciation of “give a clock,” 送钟 **sòng zhōng**, is exactly same as “attend a funeral,” 送终 **sòng zhōng**. Even though they are totally different phrases and have different meanings, their pronunciations and tones are same. For this reason, the Chinese don’t like these words; the connection implies bad luck.
- 📌 If you would like to see scenic spots and historical sites in China without huge crowds keeping you company, plan your visits to avoid the two weeks or so around the major national holidays. These holidays include Chinese New Year, International Labor Day (May 1), and National Day (October 1). Most people in China will have five to seven days off then, and everyone seems to travel, so it’s very crowded everywhere.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ How did the ancient Chinese originally calculate the time?
- ❷ Who was the famous astronomer of the East-Han dynasty (25–220)?

**See you later!**

How do you feel about your progress so far? It's handy that you can now understand how to say times, dates, weeks, months and years. You have learned 22 new words in this chapter and also have practiced numbers a little more.

It's time to take a break. When you come back, you'll learn how to make a phone call in Chinese. See you later!



# CHAPTER 9

## 第九章

Dì jiǔ zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



# Making a Phone Call 打电话

## Dǎ diàn huà

Jack works in Beijing and frequently receives phone calls from his Chinese colleagues and friends. Does the typical phone call in China follow a similar style to that in your country? There are a few differences. We'll see what they are in the Chinese phone conversation between Jack and his friend.

You will learn how to ask an operator to help you find someone's phone number, and how to respond when you dial a wrong number. You'll also learn many new words related to electronic communication methods, and some more insights to Chinese culture and customs.

Are you ready? Let's pick up the phone!

Well, it is time for you to learn how to make a phone call in Chinese.

There are not many new words in this section. Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 1**, move on to the Notes.



Jack: Hello!  
Wéi!  
喂!

Operator: Hello! Whom do you want to speak to?

**Nǐ hǎo! Nǐ zhǎo shuí?**

你好！你找谁？

Jack: Li Ming, please. Is he in?

**Wǒ zhǎo Lǐ míng, tā zài ma?**

我找李明，他在吗？

Operator: Yes, he is. Please wait a moment.

**Tā zài, qǐng děng yī xià.**

他在，请等一下。

Li Ming, this call is for you.

**Lǐ míng, zhè shì nǐ de diàn huà.**

李明，这是你的电话。

Li Ming: Thank you!

**Xiè xie!**

谢谢！

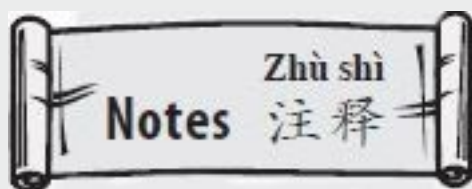
Operator: You're welcome!

**Bú yòng xiè!**

不用谢！



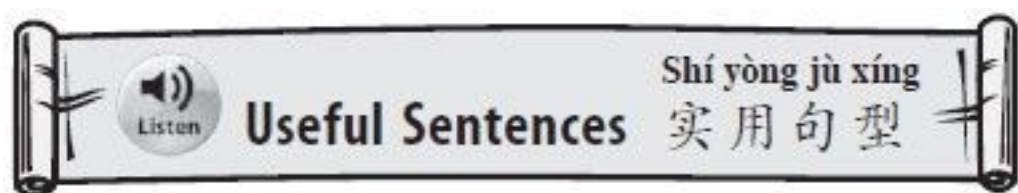
打 dǎ	dial
电话 diàn huà	phone
打电话 dǎ diàn huà	make a phone call
喂 wéi	hello
找 zhǎo	call on/look for
谁 shuí	whom/who
李明 Lǐ míng	Li Ming (name)
不用谢 bú yòng xiè	you're welcome



① 喂 Wéi is a word that has special usage for telephone calls.

It can be translated as “Hello” in English. When you make a phone call, the tone of “**wéi**” should be spoken as neutral tone or second tone, especially when you call someone you may not know well or you call someone for the first time.

- ② Note that there are several ways to express “You’re welcome!” in Chinese. Some people use “**Bú kè qì!**” and others like to say “**Bú yòng xiè!**” It’s up to you to choose the one you prefer.



Here are sentences that people use in almost every phone call.

**Nǐ zhǎo shuí?**

你找谁? (Whom do you want to speak to?)

**Tā zài ma?**

他在吗? (Is he in?)

**Zhè shì nǐ de diàn huà.**

这是你的电话。 (This phone call is for you.)

**Qǐng děng yī xià.**

请等一下。 (Please wait a moment.)

Qǐng děng yī xià.



**Extend Your Vocabulary**

Cí huì kuò zhǎn

词汇扩展

As in western countries, in China many new words and terms related to communication technologies have made their way into people's daily speech. Not all of these words have corresponding Chinese translations; people say some of the terms in their original English, such as 3G, Facebook, FTP, and PC. But many of the words do have Chinese equivalents.

<b>wǎng luò diàn huà</b> 网络电话 Skype	<b>shǒu jī</b> 手机 mobile phone	<b>zhì néng shǒu jī</b> 智能手机 smart phone	<b>diàn nǎo</b> 电脑 computer
<b>shǒu tí diàn nǎo</b>	<b>tái shì diàn nǎo</b>	<b>diàn zǐ yóu xiāng</b>	<b>diàn zǐ yóu jiàn</b>

laptop computer

台式电脑

desktop computer

电子邮箱

email address

电子邮件

email

We all dial wrong numbers once in a while. How do you handle this situation in Chinese?

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio, and then repeat after me. (Wow! There are only a few new words and they are easy to say.) Now listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Jack: Hello! Is this Mary?

**Nǐ hǎo! Nǐ shì Mǎ lì ma?**

你好! 你是玛丽吗?

Wang: No. This is Wang Hong.

**Bú shì. Wǒ shì Wáng hóng.**

不是。我是王红。

Jack: Is your mobile phone number 139-1204-9063?

**Nǐ de shǒu jī hào mǎ shì 139-1204-9063 ma?**

你的手机号码是139-1204-9063吗?

Wang: No. You have a wrong number.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*



Wang: No. You have a wrong number.

**Bú shì. Nǐ dǎ cuò le.**

不是。你打错了。

Jack: I am sorry about disturbing you.

**Duì bù qǐ, dǎ rǎo nǐ le.**

对不起，打扰你了。

Wang: No problem.

**Méi guān xi.**

没关系。



玛丽 Mǎ lì

Mary

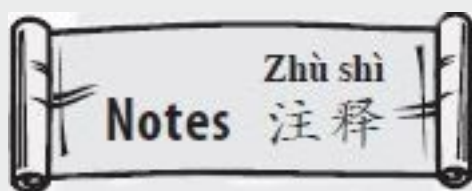
王红 Wáng hóng

Wang Hong (name)

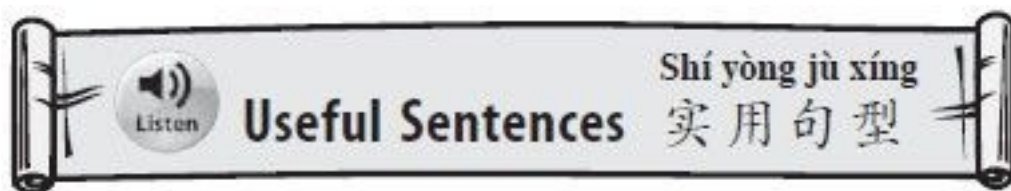
手机 shǒu jī

mobile/ cell phone

号码 <b>hào mǎ</b>	number
错 <b>cuò</b>	wrong
打扰 <b>dǎ rǎo</b>	disturb
没关系 <b>méi guān xi</b>	never mind



- ① In China, when you get a phone call and don't know who is calling, you should say “你是哪位? **Nǐ shì nǎ wèi?** (May I ask who is calling?)” or “你找谁? **Nǐ zhǎo shuí** (Who are you looking for?)” Don't ask simply “你是谁? **Nǐ shì shuí?** (Who are you?)” because Chinese view that sentence as impolite in a phone-call context.
- ② To say phone numbers in Chinese isn't difficult, because you already know how to say the basic single numbers in Chinese. As in English, you just need to read out each digit of the phone number, one by one. (Do you still remember what you learned in Chapter 7—that the “1” can be spoken as “**yāo**” instead of “**yī**”?) Local home phone numbers in China are eight digits. Mobile phone numbers have eleven digits.



With these sentences, in case you answer or dial a wrong number, you will know how to respond to the situation. The second sentence is also frequently used in many other situations.

**Nǐ dǎ cuò le.**

你打错了。(You have a wrong number.)

---

**Duì bù qǐ, dǎ rǎo nǐ le.**

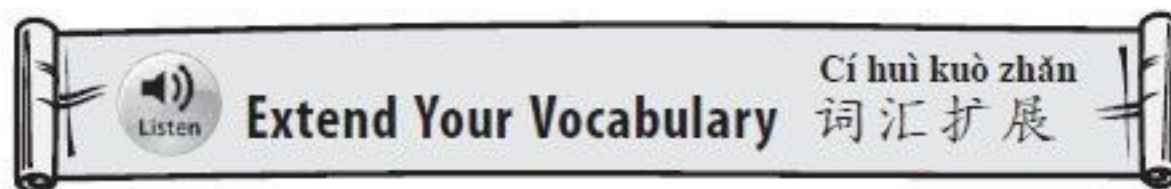
对不起，打扰你了。(I'm sorry for disturbing you.)

---

**Zhè shì tā de shǒu jī hào mǎ.**

这是他的手机号码。(This is his mobile phone number.)

---



Here are more words for modern communication. They may help

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

you feel more comfortable in talking (or emailing, or texting!) with Chinese acquaintances.

<b>hù lián wǎng</b> 互联网 internet	<b>shàng wǎng</b> 上网 internet surfing	<b>wǎng yè</b> 网页 web page	<b>duǎn xìn</b> 短信 SMS
<b>fā duǎn xìn</b> 发短信 send text message	<b>wēi ruǎn</b> 微软 Microsoft	<b>gǔ gē</b> 谷歌 Google	<b>yǎ hǔ</b> 雅虎 Yahoo



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - www.ebook-converter.com\*\*\*\*\*



Zhè shì nǐ de diàn huà.

1. 这是你的 电话.

Nǐ yǒu tā de shǒu jī hào mǎ ma?

2. 你有他的 手机号码 吗?

Zhè shì wēi ruǎn gōng sī.

3. 这是 微软公司.

Zhè shì Xiǎo lǐ de shǒu tí diàn nǎo.

- 这是 小李的手提电脑.

Zhè shì wǒ de tái shì diàn nǎo.

- 这是我的 台式电脑.

Zhè shì tā de wǎng yè, tā zài shàng wǎng.

- 这是她的 网页, 她在 上网.

Wǒ yǒu tā de diàn zǐ yóu xiāng.

- 我有她的 电子邮箱.

Zhè shì wǒ de diàn zǐ yóu jiàn.

- 这是我的 电子邮件.

Tā zài fā duǎn xìn.

- 她在 发短信.

Zhè shì gǔ gē gōng sī bú shì yǎ hǔ gōng sī.

- 这是 谷歌公司 不是 雅虎公司.

Xuǎn zé lián xiàn

## B. Connect the Sentences 选择连线

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) You have a wrong number.

a) Wǒ zhǎo Lǐ hóng

2) This phone call is for you.

b) Nǐ dǎ cuò le

3) I'm sorry for disturbing you.

c) Duì bu qǐ, dǎ rǎo nǐ le

4) I am looking for Li Hong.

d) Zhè shǐ nǐ de diàn huà

Yòng pīn yīn zào jù

## C. Use Pinyin to Make Sentences

## 用拼音造句

For each phrase, add Chinese words you know to make a complete sentence. See how many different sentences you can say for each line!

1) This is \_\_\_\_\_

Zhè shì \_\_\_\_\_

2) This is not \_\_\_\_\_

Zhè bú shì \_\_\_\_\_



diàn huà  
电话



shǒu jī  
手机



diàn chuán  
电传



tái shì diàn nǎo  
台式电脑

Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words you've learned. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: Do you have Xiao Chen's phone number?

**Nǐ yǒu Xiǎo chén de diàn huà ma?**

你有小陈的电话吗?

Y: Yes, I have. His phone number is 26375143.

**Wǒ yǒu. Tā de diàn huà hào mǎ shì 26375143.**

我有。他的电话号码是26375143。

X: This is his home phone number. I want his mobile phone number.

**Zhè shì tā jiā lǐ diàn huà, wǒ yào tā de shǒu jī hào mǎ.**

这是他家里电话,我要他的手机号码。

Y: Sorry, I don't have it.

**Duì bù qǐ, wǒ méi yǒu.**

对不起,我没有。

Zhōng wén huā xù

**TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

**Chinese Peasants' Paintings**



Can you believe that the fastest growing segment of the art market in China is peasants' paintings, also known as farmers' paintings? Since 1950, the peasants and farmers of China have been creating these works of art. It began when Mao Zedong encouraged propaganda paintings to be done on public buildings in villages, to glorify and promote farming. During the past thirty years or so, peasants' paintings have become more and more popular, and collectible, across the country.



The first attraction for most people is the paintings' extraordinarily rich and vibrantly contrasted colors. Compared with other Chinese paintings, peasants' paintings are more daily-life-related, richer in colors, and easier to understand. Most of the painters have to work outdoors during the day, so they paint and draw only in the evenings. Their subjects include their children going to school and playing, women's housework and cooking, men's work on the farm, and playing chess. Their villages and houses, mountains and rivers, holiday activities, animals, and crop harvests are featured too. These paintings are

not only descriptions of the farmers' daily lives but also expressions of their interior lives and feelings.

There are two famous branches of peasants' paintings. One is from 金山 **Jīn Shān** county, and another is from 户县 **Hù Xiàn** county. 金山 **Jīn Shān** is about two hours from Shanghai by car, and 户县 **Hù Xiàn** is in the rural area near the historic city of Xian.

## For Your Enjoyment

Here I've chosen three popular idioms from *The Art of War*, “孙子兵法 **Sūn zǐ bīng fǎ**” (see Chapter 7). Do they only relate to “war”? Of course not! When you look more closely at them, you'll realize that the philosophy behind the words can be very useful in your daily life. Enjoy!



抛砖引玉 **Pāo zhuān yǐn yù** (an idiom): To offer a few simple opening ideas to break the ice so as to allow others to offer more valuable ideas.

以逸待劳 **Yǐ yì dài láo** (an idiom): To conserve your energy in order to function more effectively.

欲擒故纵 **Yù qín gù zòng** (an idiom): To allow someone more latitude first in order to keep tighter rein on him/her afterwards.

Long before the telephone was invented, people had to use writing for their long distance communication. And although many things have changed over time, one thing stays the same: sometimes a poem communicates romance better than anything else. For example, the following poem describes how much a woman misses her husband in a remote area. You'll recognize the author: here again, it's our famous poet friend, Li Bai of the Tang Dynasty (618–907).



## LOVE STIRS IN THE SPRING

by Li Bai

In Northern Yan,  
the grass grows like silken threads of jade.  
In Qin, the graceful mulberry trees  
are bending their green heads.  
On this day, you become homesick,  
and my heart is broken.  
Spring wind, I don't know you;  
why do you sneak into my silk bed curtains?

Chūn sī  
春 思

Lǐ Bái  
李 白

Yàn	cǎo	rú	bì	sī,
燕	草	如	碧	丝,
qín	sāng	dī	lǜ	zhī.
秦	桑	低	绿	枝。
Dāng	jūn	huái	guī	rì,
当	君	怀	归	日,
shì	qiè	duàn	cháng	shí.
是	妾	断	肠	时。
Chūn	fēng	bú	xiāng	shí,
春	风	不	相	识,
hé	shì	rù	luó	wéi?
何	事	入	罗	帏?

# Suggestions

- ✎ As in most countries, mobile/cell phones are very popular in China. If you go to China and need a cell phone for your communication convenience, you don't have to buy a new phone. You just need to buy a chip at a local store and put it into your own cell phone which you use in your country. Easy, and you save money. But remember: before you go to China, make sure that your phone is unlocked by your cell phone company.
- ✎ "Ladies first" is a typical approach in western cultures. There you will see examples everywhere: a gentleman opens a door, pulls out a chair, takes off a coat...for a woman. However, you won't often see this in China. Women frequently open doors or take off their coats by themselves even when their husbands are by their sides. Does this mean that Chinese women are more independent? I don't think so. Traditionally, people in China were taught from early childhood to respect the elderly and men more, because elders have more experience and because men used to be the main breadwinners for their families. Nowadays, even though in most Chinese families women work and support their families like men do, you still can see some signs of those traditions.
- ✎ When you're walking down the street or in a park or inside shopping centers in China, you may see two girls holding hands as they are walking, talking, and laughing together. Don't think that they're... no, most of them are just good friends. Handholding is pretty common in China (between

girls, not between boys). If you see two girls holding hands while walking down the street and you're interested in one of them, don't back off, you can go over to chat and introduce yourself. Good luck!

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What are the two most famous computer companies in China today?
- ❷ When did Microsoft establish its first office in China? And where?

## See you later!

You have learned how to make a phone call in Chinese, so now you can communicate with your Chinese friends wherever you are. You have learned 39 new words, many of them using the Chinese character 电 **diàn**. And you've learned a few more things about China and its people.

The next chapter is about Chinese food. Are you hungry? I am! Let's take a short break, and then we'll begin Chapter 10.



# CHAPTER 10

## 第十章

Dì shí zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



# In a Restaurant 在餐馆 Zài cān guǎn



Lily knows that Jack likes Chinese food. She and her husband, Xu Bin, take Jack to one of their favorite Chinese restaurants in Beijing.

Here you will learn how to order foods and drinks, how to comment on food, and how to ask for your bill in a Chinese restaurant. As you know, eating is an important part of Chinese culture. Toward the end of this chapter, you'll find some unusual culture tips that may surprise you.

Please turn to the next page!

Here are some sentences that you'll want to say when you step into a restaurant.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish **New Words 1**, listen to **Dialog 1**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Waiter: May I know how many people?

**Qǐng wèn, nǐ men jǐ wèi?**

请问，你们几位？

Lily: Three people.

**Sān wèi.**

三位。

Waiter: Please sit here.

**Qǐng zhè biān zuò.**

请这边坐。

Lily: All right.

**Hǎo de.**

好的。

Waiter: What would you like to drink?

**Nǐ men hē shén me?**

你们喝什么?

Jack: Do you have Qing Dao beer?

**Nǐ men yǒu qīng dǎo pí jiǔ ma?**

你们有青岛啤酒吗?

Waiter: Yes, we do.

**Wǒ men yǒu.**

我们有。

Lily: I want four bottles of Qing Dao beer, please.

**Wǒ yào sì píng qīng dǎo pí jiǔ.**

我要四瓶青岛啤酒。

Xu Bin: I want a glass of ice water.

**Wǒ yào yī bēi bīng shuǐ.**

我要一杯冰水。

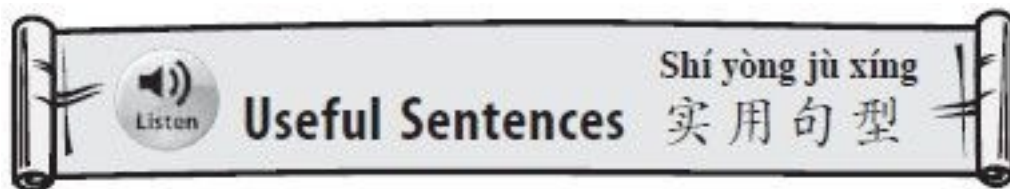


餐馆 cān guǎn	restaurant
几位 jǐ wèi	how many people
这边 zhè biān	here
什么 shén me	what
喝 hē	drink
青岛 qīng dǎo	name of a place
啤酒 pí jiǔ	beer
杯 bēi	cup/a measure word
瓶 píng	bottle/a measure word
要 yào	want

水 shuǐ	water
冰水 bīng shuǐ	ice water



- ① 几位 Jǐ wèi is a polite phrase for asking “how many people?” in Chinese. You will hear this question when you enter a restaurant, check into a hotel or buy tickets.
- ② 青岛啤酒 Qīng dǎo pí jiǔ is the most famous beer in China. The business was originally started by investors from England and Germany in 1903. The brewery is located in the oceanside city of Qīng dǎo, in Shān dōng province; it hosts an international beer festival each year, and there is also a beer museum. 青岛啤酒 Qīng dǎo pí jiǔ is available in many liquor stores in the U.S.



Do you like to drink beer? Do you like ice water? Practice these sentences so you can get what you want.

**Qǐng zhè biān zuò.**

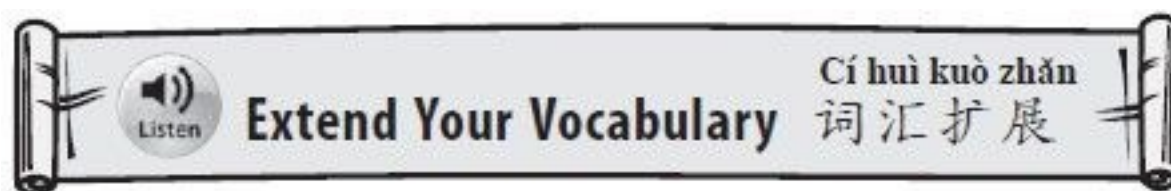
请这边坐。(Please sit here.)

Nǐ men yǒu qīng dǎo pí jiǔ ma?

你们有青岛啤酒吗?(Do you have Qing Dao beer?)

Wǒ yào yī bēi bīng shuǐ.

我要一杯冰水。(I want a glass of ice water.)



Here are more words related to drinks and beverages. When you take your next drink, think about how to say it in Chinese!

<b>pí jiǔ</b> 啤酒 beer	<b>hóng jiǔ</b> 红酒 red wine	<b>bái jiǔ</b> 白酒 liquor
<b>bái pú táo jiǔ</b> 白葡萄酒 white wine	<b>xiāng bīn jiǔ</b> 香槟酒 Champagne	<b>jī wěi jiǔ</b> 鸡尾酒 cocktail
	<b>kě kǒu kě lè (kě</b>	

<b>yǐn liào</b> 饮料 beverage	<b>lè)</b> 可口可乐(可 乐) Coca-Cola (cola)	<b>niú nǎi</b> 牛奶 milk
<b>guǒ zhī</b> 果汁 juice	<b>chéng zhī</b> 橙汁 orange juice	<b>píng guǒ zhī</b> 苹果汁 apple juice

After you sit down and have some drinks, you'll start to order food. Let's learn how.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Waiter: Here is the menu, please order.

**Zhè shì cài dān, qǐng diǎn cài.**

这是菜单，请点菜。

Jack: I want gong bao chicken.

**Wǒ yào gōng bǎo jī dīng.**

我要宫保鸡丁。

Lily: Steamed fish and shredded beef.

**Qīng zhēng yú hé niú ròu sī.**

清蒸鱼和牛肉丝。

Xu Bin: I want one order of dumplings, please.

**Yào yī fèn jiǎo zi.**

要一份饺子。

Lily: I would like to order seafood soup for everyone.

**Měi rén yī wǎn hǎi xiān tāng.**

每人一碗海鲜汤。

Xu Bin: Okay, that's enough!

**Hǎo le, zú gòu le!**

好了, 足够了!







菜单 cài dān	menu
点 diǎn	order
菜 cài	dish
宫保鸡丁 gōng bǎo jī dīng	gong bao chicken
清蒸鱼 qīng zhēng yú	steamed fish
鱼 yú	fish
牛肉丝 niú ròu sī	shredded beef
一份 yī fèn	one order
饺子 jiǎo zi	dumpling
要 yào	want to
汤 tāng	soup
海鲜 hǎi xiān	seafood
每人 měi rén	everyone
碗 wǎn	bowl/a measure word
足够 zú gòu	enough
了 le	particle



- ① You'll find that a lot of restaurants provide a 菜单 **cài dān** (menu) with both English and Chinese versions, in most large and medium-sized cities in China. If you are allergic to MSG, which is 味精 **wèi jīng** in Chinese, or to some other ingredient commonly used in Chinese restaurants, you'll need to tell the service person when you order your food.
- ② There are two new measure words in this chapter, 份 **fèn** and 碗 **wǎn**. In “一份饺子 **yī fèn jiǎo zi** (one order of dumplings),” 一份 **yī fèn** means “an order.” In “一碗汤 **yī wǎn tāng** (one bowl of soup),” 碗 **wǎn** means “a bowl.” Can you get the idea now that different subjects need different measure words?



Memorize these useful sentences. Then you can use them to order in Chinese restaurants.

**Wǒ yào qīng zhēng yú.**

我要清蒸鱼。(I want steamed fish.)

---

Wǒ yào niú ròu sī.

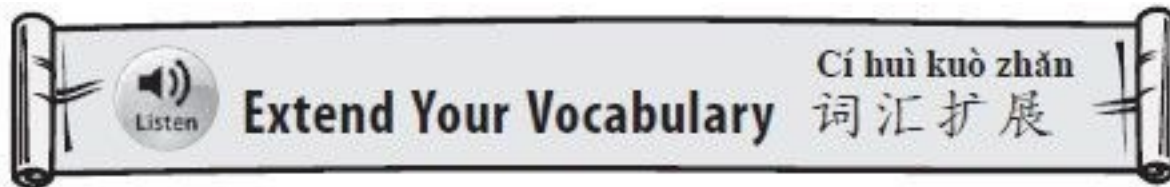
我要牛肉丝。(I would like shredded beef.)

---

Hǎo le, zú gòu le!

好了, 足够了! (That is good; that's enough.)

---



Here are more new words about food and meats, to expand your Chinese food vocabulary.

<b>mǐ fàn</b> 米饭 cooked rice	<b>miàn tiáo</b> 面条 noodles	<b>hún tún</b> 馄饨 wonton	<b>bāo zi</b> 包子 buns
<b>jī</b> 鸡	<b>yā</b> 鸭	<b>yú</b> 鱼	<b>xiā</b> 虾

chicken	duck	fish	shrimp
<b>ròu</b> 肉 meat	<b>zhū ròu</b> 猪肉 pork	<b>niú ròu</b> 牛肉 beef	<b>yáng ròu</b> 羊肉 lamb

You are full. Now your hosts ask you how you liked the food; and you may also want to know how to handle leftovers and the bill.

Listen to **New Words 3** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 3**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. When you're ready, move on to the Notes.



Jack: These dishes are so delicious.

**Zhè xiē cài zhēn hǎo chī!**

这些菜真好吃！

Lily: Please have more if you like.

**Nǐ xǐ huān, duō chī diǎn.**

你喜欢，多吃点。

Jack: I will. Thank you!

**Wǒ huì de, xiè xie!**

我会的，谢谢！

*(time passes)*

Lily: Are you full?  
**Nǐ men chī bǎo le ma?**  
你们吃饱了吗？

Jack: I am full.  
**Chī bǎo le.**  
吃饱了。

Lily: Waiter, please pack these dishes.  
**Fú wù yuán, qǐng dǎ bāo.**  
服务员，请打包。

Xu Bin: Please bring me the bill.  
**Qǐng jié zhàng.**  
请结帐。

Waiter: This is your bill.  
**Zhè shì nǐ de zhàng dān.**  
这是你的账单。



这些 zhè xiē	these
菜 cài	dish
真好 zhēn hǎo	really good
喜欢 xǐ huān	like
多 duō	more
多吃点 duō chī diǎn	eat more
会的 huì de	will
饱 bǎo	full
服务员 fú wù yuán	waiter
打包 dǎ bāo	pack
结帐 jié zhàng	pay bill
账单 zhàng dān	bill



- ① 结账 **Jié zhàng** equals “pay bill” in English. Frequently, you will also hear people saying “买单 **mǎi dān**” (literally, “buy the bill”) or “付钱 **fù qián**” (“pay money”). They all mean the same thing.
- ② “**Duō chī diǎn**—have more” and “**Chī bǎo le ma?**—are you full?” are very common sentences said by Chinese when you have meals with them. Best to get used to hearing these!



These are key sentences when you eat in a restaurant. Isn't it great to be able to talk to people in Chinese?

**Nǐ chī bǎo le ma?**

你吃 饱了吗? (Are you full?)

**Zhè xiē cài hěn hǎo chī.**

这些 菜 很好吃。 (These dishes are very delicious.)

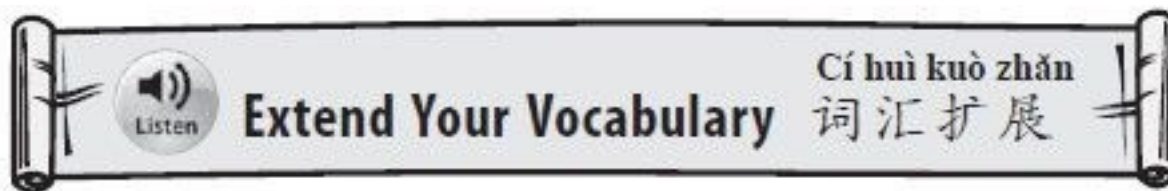
**Qǐng jié zhàng.**

请 结 帐。 (Please bring me the bill.)

**Zhè shì nǐ de zhàng dān.**



这是你的账单。(This is your bill.)



Expand your vocabulary with some terms for dishes, tastes, and payment. They'll be fun to try the next time you're at a Chinese restaurant.

<b>běi jīng kǎo yā</b> 北京烤鸭 roast Beijing duck	<b>yú xiāng ròu sī</b> 鱼香肉丝 shredded pork with garlic sauce	<b>má pó dòu fu</b> 麻婆豆腐 stir fried bean curd in spicy sauce	<b>xiāng gū cài xīn</b> 香菇菜心 mushrooms with tender greens
<b>jī chǎo miàn</b> 鸡炒面 chicken fried noodles	<b>dàn huā tāng</b> 蛋花汤 egg drop soup	<b>tián</b> 甜 sweet	<b>suān</b> 酸 sour
<b>lǎ</b>	<b>jié zhàng</b>	<b>mǎi dān</b>	<b>fù qián</b>

辣 spicy/hot	结帐 pay bill	买单 pay bill	付钱 pay bill
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Wǒ xiǎng chī jiǎo zi.

1. 我想吃饺子。

Tā yào hē hǎi xiān tāng.

2. 他要喝海鲜汤。

Má pó dòu fu hěn là ma?

3. 麻婆豆腐很辣吗?

Wǒ xiǎng chī hún tún hé bao zi.

- 我想吃馄饨和包子。

Tā bú yào mǐ fàn, yào miàn tiáo.

- 他不要米饭, 要面条。

Jiē kè xiǎng chī běi jīng kǎo yā.

- 杰克想吃北京烤鸭。

Tā men yào hē hóng jiǔ hé pí jiǔ.

- 他们要喝红酒和啤酒。

Nǐ yào dàn huā tāng ma?

- 你要蛋花汤吗?

Wǒ bú yào guǒ zhī, yào niú nǎi.

- 我不要果汁, 要牛奶。

Nǐ xǐ huān yǒu diǎn tián de cài ma?

- 你喜欢有点甜的菜吗?

Tā bù xǐ huān tài suān de cài.

- 他不喜欢太酸的菜。

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dá àn

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits into the sentence.

Wǒ xiǎng chī .

- 1) 我想吃 ( ) 。

tāng	bīng shuǐ	miàn tiáo	jī dàn tāng
A. 汤	B. 冰水	C. 面条	D. 鸡蛋汤

Tā xiǎng hē .

2. 她想喝 ( ) 。

mǐ fàn	yú	bāo zi	hóng jiǔ
A. 米饭	B. 鱼	C. 包子	D. 红酒

Tā yào yī bēi .

3. 他要一杯 ( ) 。

niú ròu	bīng shuǐ	mǐ fàn	yā
A. 牛肉	B. 冰水	C. 米饭	D. 鸭

## C. Use Pinyin to Make Sentences

Yòng pīn yīn zào jù

用拼音造句

For each phrase, add Chinese words you know to make a complete sentence. See how many different sentences you can say, for each line!

1) I want \_\_\_\_\_

**Wǒ yào \_\_\_\_\_**

2) Do you have \_\_\_\_\_

**Nǐ men yǒu \_\_\_\_\_ ma?**

3) This is your \_\_\_\_\_

**Zhè shì nǐ de \_\_\_\_\_**

**Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà**

## **D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话**

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words you've learned. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: What would you like to drink?

**Nǐ men hē shén me?**

**你们喝什么?**

Y: We would like to have a bottle of beer and a glass of ice water.

**Wǒ men yào yī píng pí jiǔ hé yī bēi bīng shuǐ.**

**我们要一瓶啤酒和一杯冰水。**

X: We would like to have a steamed fish, and one mushrooms with tender greens.

**Yào yī fèn qīng zhēng yú, yī fèn xiāng gū cài xīn.**

要一份清蒸鱼,一份香菇菜心。

Y: These are enough for two people.

**Zhè xiē zú gòu nǐ men liǎng rén chī le.**

这些足够你们两人吃了。

Zhōng wén huā xù

## **TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

### **Interesting Eating Customs**

As you now know, fish is called “鱼 yú” in Chinese. When you order fish in the Chinese style, the dish contains the entire fish: it comes with head, bone, and tail. You may wonder how Chinese eat fish with all these accessories. Usually, Chinese eat the top side of the fish first. When the top side's flesh is gone, you might think they'd flip the fish over and eat the other side, right? No! They use chopsticks to carefully take the bone out, and then they eat the flesh of the other side. Or sometimes, people separate out the fish's bone first and put the bone on one side of the plate, and then begin to eat the flesh. You may ask, why don't they just turn the fish over to eat the other side? The reason is similar to the reason you don't turn a boat upside down; it's simply considered bad luck, and might bring disaster to you or your family. Interesting, no?



Another custom related to fish involves the Chinese New Year's Eve dinner. People like to eat fish as part of this important family dinner, because it signifies that there will be extra money or plenty of food coming to the family during the upcoming year. Why? Because the word "fish" in Chinese is pronounced as "鱼 yú." And that pronunciation sounds exactly like another Chinese word, 余 yú, which means "extra" or "to have more things left." Therefore, to have fish left over at New Year's Eve dinner makes people hope that it'll bring more income or good things to their families in the year ahead. The Chinese saying for this is "年年有余 Nián nián yǒu yú."

Are you familiar with another Chinese tradition related to noodles? Growing up in China, when our birthdays came, our moms usually cooked us a bowl of long noodles mixed with eggs and green vegetables. That's because long noodles symbolize longevity with a happy and healthy life. Today in



China, young people often celebrate their birthdays in the western style, sharing a birthday cake with family and friends. However, some people still keep up the “long noodle” tradition for their birthdays.

## For Your Enjoyment

Here are two popular idioms concerning eating, plus one about 鱼 yú (fish)!



画饼充饥 **Huà bǐng chōng jī** (an idiom): To reduce hunger by drawing a pancake.

如鱼得水 **Rú yú dé shuǐ** (an idiom): To feel satisfied and comfortable in an environment, like fish in water.

囫圇吞枣 **Hú lún tūn zǎo** (an idiom): To lap up information without digesting and understanding it well.

Children in China are often told not to waste food—it doesn’t matter if you “don’t like it” or “are already full.” Sound familiar? It seems to be common to many cultures. We were told constantly how hard people work to plant and harvest rice, wheat, corn and vegetables. There’s a Tang Dynasty poem which describes farmers’ hard work, one of Li Shen’s most famous works.



## THE INDUSTRIOUS PEASANT

by Li Shen

At noon, the hot sun sears the peasants  
who are hoeing in the fields.  
Beads of their sweat moisten the dry earth  
beneath the seedlings.  
Does anyone ever stop to realize  
that every grain of rice in his bowl  
Is the fruit of the peasants' endless toil?

Mǐn nóng

悯农

Lǐ Shēn


李绅

Chú	hé	rì	dāng	wǔ,
锄	禾	日	当	午,
hàn	dī	hé	xià	tǔ.
汗	滴	禾	下	土。
Shuí	zhī	pán	zhōng	cān,
谁	知	盘	中	餐,
lì	lì	jiē	xīn	kǔ.
粒	粒	皆	辛	苦。

## Suggestions

📖 When you're invited to dinner at a Chinese friend's house for the first time, you may be surprised by the fact that your host cooks many different dishes of food and lays them out on the table, and as you sit around the table, everyone eats directly from the communal dishes using his or her own chopsticks. Soup, too, is eaten directly from the common bowl. This is the normal eating style in ordinary Chinese families. It's certainly different from western family-style dining, in which there are fewer dishes of food, and people use common, shared serving spoons or forks to pick up an amount of food, put it onto one's own plate and eat it with one's own set of silverware (fork, knife, and spoon). In the old days, Chinese didn't use shared serving chopsticks or spoons at all. Now, though, a lot of people have begun to use shared serving chopsticks and spoons, especially when there are guests at the meal.

📖 A lot of western people like to use chopsticks when they eat Chinese food. Chinese have used chop-sticks for thousands of years, and not surprisingly, there are some courtesy rules about using chop-sticks. The most important one is that when you pick up food from a communal dish, touch only the piece you're choosing and avoid touching or moving other pieces around. Another don't: never stick your chopsticks vertically into your rice in your bowl and let them stay there, because people view it as being bad luck. In addition, always put your chopsticks down together, as a pair, at one side of your plate or bowl; don't put one on each side of your plate or bowl. That's because if two chopsticks are separated, it implies that you want to break up your relationship.

 You may remember from earlier chapters that Chinese respect seniors. Here is another example that relates to that. When you are invited to a family dinner at a Chinese friend's house, you'll need to know which seat at the table is the appropriate one for you to sit at. According to Chinese custom, the most senior person of the family sits in the chair facing the entrance door. Then, the younger a person is the farther away from the most senior person he or she sits. As an honor to you, the invited guest, you likely will be asked to sit in the chair for the most senior person of the family. In that situation, you may want to modestly decline the offer and let the most senior person take that chair. Such polite behavior will be greatly appreciated by your hosts.

## **Do You Know?**

- ❶ What are the eight main cuisine styles in China?
- ❷ What is the name of Beijing's most famous traditional restaurant for "roast Beijing duck"?

## **See you later!**

Can you believe that you have learned 105 new words in this chapter's "New Words" and "Extend Your Vocabulary" sections? Don't worry if you can't quite remember them all; as long as you review and practice the most useful ones and the names of some of your favorite foods and drinks, that's great progress.

What's next? Whenever you're ready, follow me to a Chinese

tea house to enjoy Chinese tea and culture!



# CHAPTER 11

## 第十一章

Dì shí yī zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Tea House 茶馆 Chá guǎn

Lily and her husband take Jack to the famous Lao She Tea House after dinner. In this tea house, Jack notices that he not only can

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

drink tea, chat, and eat cookies, but also can watch performances and shows.

In some ways a Chinese tea house is similar to coffee shops in western countries, but there are many interesting differences. This chapter will show you what a Chinese tea house is like, and you'll learn how to say the names of different Chinese teas and performances that are offered in a tea house. In addition, you will learn about the Chinese "tea culture" that has been passed from generation to generation.

Here you are with Jack and Lily at Lao She Tea House in Beijing.

Isn't it beautiful?

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Jack: What place is this?  
**Zhè shì shén me dì fāng?**  
这是什么地方?

Lily: This is Lao She Tea House.  
**Zhè shì Lǎo shě chá guǎn.**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



这是老舍茶馆。

Waiter:: Welcome!

**Huān yíng guāng lín!**

欢迎光临!

Lily: What kinds of tea do you have?

**Qǐng wèn, yǒu shén me chá?**

请问，有什么茶？

Waiter: White tea, green tea and red tea.

**Bái chá, lǜ chá hé hóng chá.**

白茶、绿茶和红茶。

Lily: We want a pot of green tea.

**Wǒ men yào yī hú lǜ chá.**

我们要一壶绿茶。

Jack: What are these?

**Zhè xiē shì shén me?**

这些是什么？

Waiter: These are cookies.

**Zhè xiē shì diǎn xīn.**

这些是点心。

Please take your time.

**Qǐng nín màn yòng.**

请您慢用。



茶馆 chá guǎn	tea house
地方 dì fāng	place
老舍 Lǎo shě	a name
光临 guāng lín	presence/ coming
白茶 bái chá	white tea
绿茶 lǜ chá	green tea

一壶 yī hú	a pot of
点心 diǎn xīn	cookies
慢用 màn yòng	slowly taste/ take time



- ① 什么 **Shén me** means “what” or “what kind of.” 什么 **Shén me** can combine with different words to form question sentences, such as “这是什么地方? **Zhè shì shén me dì fāng?** (What place is this?)” and “你有什么茶? **Nǐ yǒu shén me chá?** (What kind of tea do you have?).”
- ② “请您慢用 **Qǐng nín màn yòng** (Take time to enjoy your meal/drink/tea...)” is a courtesy sentence that is often used to invite guests to enjoy the foods or drinks being offered.
- ③ Do you still remember the rule about the pinyin **ü**? In 绿茶 **lǜ chá** the two dots on top of **ü** need to be kept.



Do you use sentences with “this is” or “these are” very often? If you’re like most of us you do! Read and practice these.

**Zhè shì shén me dì fāng?**

这是什么地方? (What place is this?)

---

**Zhè shì chá guǎn.**

这是茶馆。 (This is a tea house.)

---

**Zhè shì lǜ chá, bú shì hóng chá.**

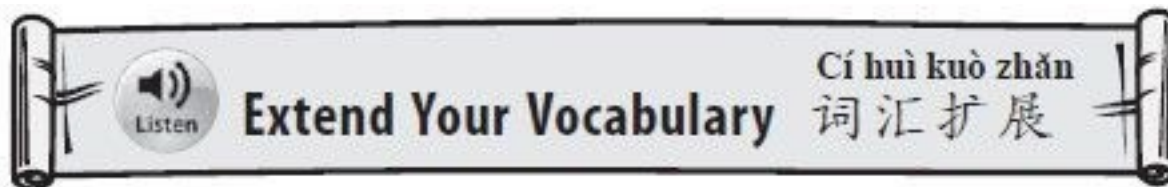
这是绿茶,不是红茶。 (This is green tea, not red tea.)

---

**Zhè xiē shì diǎn xīn.**

这些是点心。 (These are cookies.)

---



These are names of popular teas in China. Try them...the words *and* the teas!

<b>lóng jǐng chá</b> 龙井茶 Longjing tea	<b>mò lì huā chá</b> 茉莉花茶 jasmine tea	<b>jú huā chá</b> 菊花茶 chrysanthemum tea
<b>wū lóng chá</b> 乌龙茶 oolong tea	<b>pǔ ěr chá</b> 普洱茶 Pu'er tea	<b>yǒu jī chá</b> 有机茶 organic tea

At Lao She Tea House you can both drink tea and watch performances. Now you'll learn how to talk about these performances in Chinese.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish **New Words 2**, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Waiter: This is the program.

**Zhè shì jié mù dān.**

这是节目单。

Lily: Let me see.

**Wǒ kàn kan.**

我 看 看。

Jack: What kind of performances do they have?

**Yǒu shén me biǎo yǎn?**

有 什 么 表 演?

Lily: There are many kinds of performances.

**Yǒu xǔ duō biǎo yǎn.**

有 许 多 表 演。

Jack: Do they have Beijing Opera?

**Yǒu jīng jù ma?**

有 京 剧 吗?

Lily: Yes, they do.

**Yǒu.**

有。

Jack: Do they have Gong Fu?

**Yǒu gōng fū ma?**

有 功 夫 吗?

Lily: Yes, they do that too. There are also tea ceremony performances.

**Yě yǒu. Hái yǒu chá yì biǎo yǎn.**

也有。还有茶艺表演。

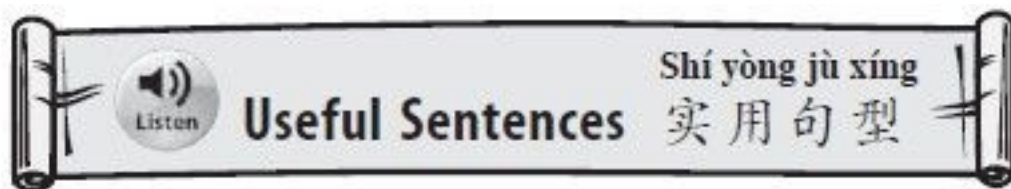


节目单 jié mù dān	program
看看 kàn kan	see/watch
表演 biǎo yǎn	performance
许多 xǔ duō	many
京剧 jīng jù	Beijing Opera
功夫 gōng fū	Gong Fu
也 yě	too/also
还有 hái yǒu	still have
茶艺 chá yì	tea ceremony





- ① You have learned 有 **yǒu** and its antonym, 没有 **méi yǒu**. In this chapter, you also have learned 也有 **yě yǒu** and 还有 **hái yǒu**. Notice their differences: 也有 **yě yǒu** means “also have”; but 还有 **hái yǒu** means “still have,” “what else,” or “have more.”
- ② Have you noticed that the verb 看看 **kàn kan** is another duplicate word? When you say it, remember to pronounce the first 看 **kàn** in the fourth tone, and the second 看 **kan** in a neutral tone.
- ③ Tea ceremony is one of the most beloved traditions in Chinese culture. It has been influenced by Daoism, Buddhism, and Confucianism. The **gōng fū chá**—“gong fu tea ceremony”—is performed in many tea houses and also on special occasions.



These sentences are related to performances. You can use them beyond tea houses, such as at theaters.

**Zhè shì jié mù dān.**

这是节目单。(This is the [performance] program.)

**Yǒu jīng jù, yě yǒu gōng fū biǎo yǎn.**

有京剧，也有功夫表演。

(There are Beijing Opera and Gong Fu performances too.)

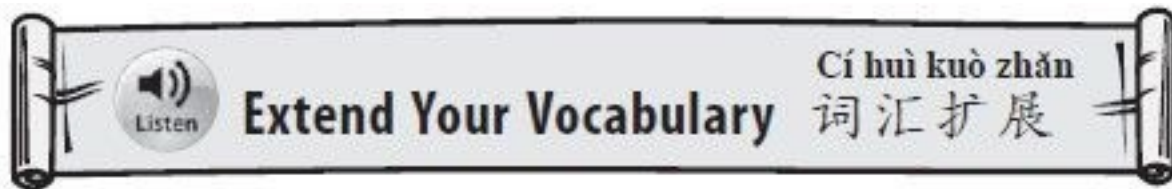
**Hái yǒu chá yì biǎo yǎn.**

还有茶艺表演。

(They also have tea ceremony performances.)



A lot of people like listening to music, watching plays, or enjoying other performance arts during their spare time. Here are names of more kinds of performances.



xì jù

gē jù

chàng gē

戏剧 drama	歌剧 opera	唱歌 singing
yīn yuè 音乐 music	wǔ dǎo 舞蹈 dance	zá jì 杂技 acrobatics



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Wǒ men hē mò lì huā chá.

1. 我们喝茉莉花茶。

Nǐ xǐ huān chàng gē ma?

2. 你喜欢唱歌吗?

Nǐ hē lǜ chá hái shì hóng chá?

• 你喝绿茶还是红茶?

Wǒ xǐ huān yǒu jī chá.

• 我喜 欢 有机茶。

Tā yào lóng jǐng chá, bú yào jú huā chá.

• 他要 龙井茶, 不要 菊花茶。

Nǐ men yǒu wū lóng chá ma?

• 你们有 乌龙茶 吗?

Nǐ men xǐ huān kàn zá jì hái shì gōng fū?

• 你们喜 欢 看 杂技 还是 功夫?

Tā bù xǐ huān xì jù, xǐ huān gē jù.

• 她不喜 欢 戏剧, 喜 欢 歌剧。

Zhè lǐ yǒu yīn yuè hé wǔ dǎo.

• 这里有 音乐 和 舞蹈。

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dá àn

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits into the sentence.

Zhè shì            ma?

1) 这是 (    ) 吗?

hěn hǎo

xiè xie

gāo xìng

chá guǎn

A. 很好

B. 谢谢

C. 高兴

D. 茶馆

Wǒ yào yī bēi .

2. 我要一杯（ ）。

huān yíng	bīng shuǐ	rèn shí	jù huì
A. 欢迎	B. 冰水	C. 认识	D. 聚会

Wǒ xǐ huān kàn .

3. 我喜欢看（ ）。

zhè shì	nà shì	jīng jù	bú kè qì
A. 这是	B. 那是	C. 京剧	D. 不客气

Fān yì

## C. Translate 翻译

Translate the following sentences into pinyin.

1. Is this a tea house? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Do you like tea or coffee? \_\_\_\_\_

3. I like to watch Beijing Opera and Gong Fu.

---

4. We like to see the tea ceremony performances.

---

Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words you've learned. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: What is this place?

**Zhè shì shén me dì fāng?**

这是什么地方?

Y: This is a tea house.

**Zhè shì chá guǎn.**

这是茶馆。

X: What kind of tea do you have?

**Nǐ men yǒu shén me chá?**

你们有什么茶?

Y: We have green tea and red tea.

**Wǒ men yǒu lǜ chá hé hóng chá.**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

我们有绿茶和红茶。

Zhōng wén huā xù

## TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮

### The Tea House Phenomenon

If you've ever seen traditional Chinese paintings—landscapes with majestic mountains and beautiful rivers—maybe you've noticed that the painters frequently also included a small house or pavilion with two people sitting inside, face to face, drinking tea and chatting. Can you imagine how relaxing and delightful it would be to have a retreat like that, to drink, talk, and enjoy nature's beauty all at the same time? It's not hard to see why the tea house (which is also called a tea room, tea building, or tea garden) continues to be so popular in China, even today.



The function of the Chinese tea house is similar to that of

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



Starbucks and other coffee shops in the United States. People get together there to drink tea, chat, meet friends, share opinions, exchange news, discuss the stock market, and so on.

There are many different kinds of tea houses in China. If you go to southern China, such as Guangdong province, you'll find that tea houses serve not only tea, but also dim sum. When you visit central parts of China, like the Cheng Dou area, you'll see tea houses everywhere. Locals can be found in tea houses drinking, talking, eating, and playing games from morning to night, especially retirees. In northern China, especially in Beijing, some tea houses also offer short shows, from comedy to Beijing opera to Chinese traditional instrument performances. Have you been to the Lao She Tea House in Beijing yet? Its name refers to the famous 1957 Chinese drama *Tea House* written by 老舍 **Lǎo shě**.

## For Your Enjoyment

One of the reasons people drink tea is for their health. But, as the Chinese tea ceremony reminds us, our state of mind is even more important than drinking tea. Here are a few very well-known idioms for you to enjoy!



知足常乐 **Zhī zú cháng lè** (an idiom): To reach happiness via contentment.

荣辱不惊 **Róng rǔ bù jīng** (an idiom): To remain calm and unaffected by either honor or disgrace.

无为而治 **Wú wéi ér zhì** (an idiom): To hold power by doing nothing. *(This idea originally came from the philosopher Lǎo Zǐ's 无为而无不为 wú wéi er wú bù wéi)*

This Tang (618–907) poem was written by Jiao Ran, a well-known poet, a tea lover, and a Buddhist monk. The poem is about drinking tea on Double Ninth Day (**Chóng yáng jié**) which is a traditional Chinese holiday celebrated on the 9th day of the 9th lunar month. The wine and tea referred to here are chrysanthemum wine and chrysanthemum tea.



DRINKING TEA WITH A FRIEND, LU YU,  
ON THE DOUBLE NINTH DAY \*

by Jiao Ran

The Double Ninth Day,  
at the temple in the mountain,  
Chrysanthemums blossoming  
by the bamboo fence.  
On this day  
folks time and again enjoy the wine,  
Who would, alas,  
relish the simple aroma of the tea.

Jiǔ rì yǔ lù chù shì yǔ yǐn chá  
九日与陆处士羽饮茶

Jiǎo Rán  
皎然

Jiǔ	rì	shān	sēng	yuàn,
九	日	山	僧	院，
dōng	lí	jú	yě	huáng.
东	篱	菊	也	黄。
Sú	rén	duō	fàn	jiǔ,
俗	人	多	泛	酒，
shuí	jiě	zhù	chá	xiāng.
谁	解	助	茶	香。

\* This poem was translated by Jiansheng Lu.

# Suggestions

As soon as you sit down in your Chinese friends' home, they always serve you tea right away. This is a traditional Chinese custom. But, while you hold your tea cup, you might wonder why they only fill the cup about two-thirds full. There are two very simple and practical reasons for this custom. First of all, Chinese like to drink their tea hot, and if filled all the way, the cup would be too hot to hold in your hands. Secondly, if tea were to spill out of the cup it could burn your or others' hands or wet your clothes. That wouldn't be too pleasant for either the host or the guest. Therefore, people often say "serve tea 70% full, eat rice until you're 80% full, and serve wine to the top of the cup." In Chinese, it's 茶七、饭八、酒十分 **chá qī, fàn bā, jiǔ shí fēn**.

When you are in a Chinese restaurant or tea house with your friends, if a waiter or waitress pours a cup of tea for you while you're in the middle of talking so are unable to say "thank you," your Chinese friend may bend his or her index and middle fingers and knock on the table. Why does he or she do this? It's a way of saying "thanks" to the waiter/waitress when it's not possible to interrupt a conversation. Usually, people knock at least twice. You might like to practice it to express your gratitude in this kind of situation, when you're not in a position to say the words.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What are the most popular green teas in China?
- ❷ What is the red tea that Chinese people know best?

## **See you later!**

For well over 2,000 years now, tea has been popular. Although it's loved worldwide now, it remains especially close to people's hearts in China. Did you know that these days you can even find Chinese style tea houses outside of China? In this chapter you've learned 45 words that will help you talk about many aspects of Chinese tea and Chinese performing arts.

Let's have another cup of tea, and I will see you after this break!



# CHAPTER 12

## 第十二章

Dì shí èr zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Where to Go 去哪里 Qù nǎ lǐ

Jack wants to look around in Beijing. He needs to figure out how to get to the places that he wants to see. Although he has a map

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

and can check information on the Internet, he still needs to ask people for directions once in a while.

You're about to learn many practical words, phrases, and sentences about directions and locations. With them, it will be easier for you to navigate in China. Also, in a lot of places in China you'll see temples; we'll learn a bit about them in this chapter.

Let's go!

There are many new words in this chapter. But don't worry, with a bit of repeating and practice you'll soon learn them. Jack uses them as he asks a person on the street, Wang, a few questions.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Remember, you can practice until you are satisfied. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 1**, move on to the Notes.



Jack: Where is the restroom, please?

**Qǐng wèn, cè suǒ zài nǎ lǐ?**

请问，厕所在哪里？

Wang: Turn left, and go straight ahead.

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



**Zuǒ zhuǎn, yī zhí zǒu.**

左 转 ， 一 直 走 。

Jack: How can I get to the book store?

**Qù shū diàn zěn me zǒu?**

去 书 店 怎 么 走 ？

Wang: Go straight ahead, then turn right.

**Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu, rán hòu yòu zhuǎn.**

一 直 往 前 走 ， 然 后 右 转 。

Jack: Where is the post office?

**Yóu jú zài nǎ lǐ?**

邮 局 在 哪 里 ？

Wang: It's there, next to the school.

**Zài nà lǐ, xué xiào de páng biān.**

在 那 里 ， 学 校 的 旁 边 。

Jack: Where is the hospital?

**Yī yuàn zài nǎ lǐ?**

医 院 在 哪 里 ？

*(peers at map)*

It's behind the hotel.

**Zài lǐ guǎn de hòu biān.**

在旅馆的后边。

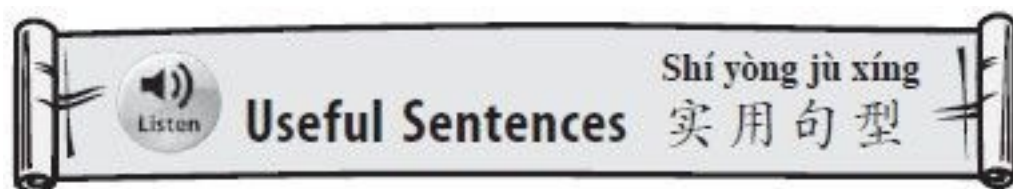


去 qù	go
哪里/那里 nǎ lǐ/nà li	where/there
厕所 cè suǒ	restroom
哪儿 nǎ er	where
左 zuǒ	left
转 zhuǎn	turn
一直 yī zhí	straight
走 zǒu	go/walk
书店 shū diàn	book store
往 wǎng	toward
前 qián	ahead
右 yòu	right

邮局 yóu jú	post office
学校 xué xiào	school
旁边 páng biān	beside
医院 yī yuàn	hospital
旅馆 lǚ guǎn	hotel
然后 rán hòu	then
后边 hòu biān	behind



- ① 哪里 **Nǎ lǐ** and 哪儿 **nǎ er** are question words. They both mean “where” in English. **Shén me dì fāng**, a more complicated expression for “where,” is also often used.
- ② Native Beijingers like to pronounce the sound “er” at the ends of some words, such as **nǎ er** (“where”). However, most Chinese including non-native Beijingers do not pronounce the sound “er.” They say **nǎ lǐ** (“where”) (used in this book) and **zhè lǐ** (“here”) instead of **nǎ er** and **zhè er**.



These sentences are handy to memorize; they're key "patterns" to use when you need to ask directions.

**Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.**

一直往前走。(Go straight ahead.)

---

**Zài xué xiào de páng biān.**

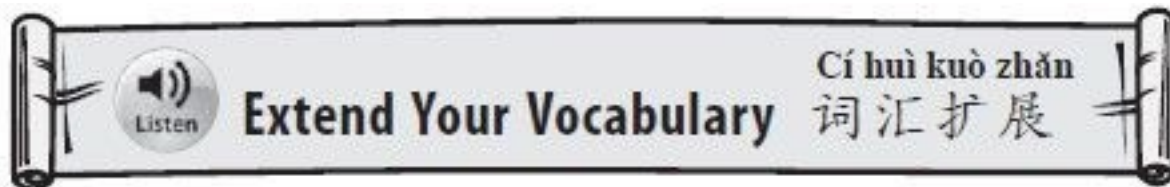
在学校的旁边。(It's next to the school.)

---

**Zài lǚ guǎn de hòu biān.**

在旅馆的后边。(It's behind the hotel.)

---



When you're out and about, these are some useful words to know. The word "bathroom" has three different Chinese versions. You can use any of the three.

<p><b>cè suǒ</b></p> <p>厕所</p> <p>bathroom/ restroom</p>	<p><b>xǐ shǒu jiān</b></p> <p>洗手间</p> <p>bathroom/ restroom</p>	<p><b>wèi shēng jiān</b></p> <p>卫生间</p> <p>bathroom/ restroom</p>	
<p><b>shí zì lù kǒu</b></p> <p>十字路口</p> <p>intersection</p>	<p><b>hóng dēng</b></p> <p>红灯</p> <p>red light</p>	<p><b>lǜ dēng</b></p> <p>绿灯</p> <p>green light</p>	<p><b>huáng dēng</b></p> <p>黄灯</p> <p>yellow light</p>

Jack has a few more things to ask the helpful passerby Wang! Here we'll learn more about discussing directions in Chinese.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish **New Words 2**, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Jack: Would you tell me where Silk Street is?

**Qǐng wèn, xiù shuǐ jiē zài nǎ lǐ?**

请问，秀水街在哪里？

Wang: It's at the east side of Beijing.

**Zài běi jīng de dōng biān.**

在北京的东边。

Jack: Where is the Temple of Heaven?

**Tiān tán gōng yuán ne?**

天坛公园呢?

Wang: It's at the south side of Beijing.

**Zài běi jīng de nán biān.**

在北京的南边。

Jack: Where is Beijing University?

**Běi jīng dà xué ne?**

北京大学呢?

Wang: It's at the west side of Beijing.

**Zài běi jīng de xī biān.**

在北京的西边。

Jack: Where is the National Stadium?

**Guó jiā tǐ yù chǎng ne?**

国家体育场呢?

Wang: It's at the north side of Beijing.

**Zài běi jīng de běi biān.**

在北京的北边。



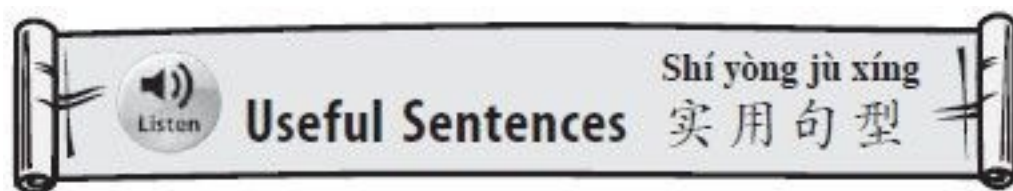
秀水街 xiù shuǐ jiē	Silk Street
北京 běi jīng	Beijing
东 dōng	east
东边 dōng biān	east side
天坛 tiān tán	Temple of Heaven
公园 gōng yuán	park
南 nán	south
南边 nán biān	south side
大学 dà xué	university
西 xī	west
西边 xī biān	west side
国家 guó jiā	country/ nation
体育 tǐ yù	physical exercise



体育场 <b>tǐ yù chǎng</b>	stadium
北 <b>běi</b>	north
北边 <b>běi biān</b>	north side



- ① The word 在 **zài** is used as a verb in simple location sentences. It means “to be in/at.” It usually is followed by a location noun or pronoun. For example, “医院在东边 **Yī yuàn zài dōng biān** (The hospital is in the east).”
- ② In talking about directions, Chinese usually start with 东 **dōng** (east) and continue clockwise, that is, 东南西北 **Dōng nán xī běi** (“East, south, west, north”). But westerners usually state them in a completely different order, going from “up” (north) to “down” (south), and then from “right” (east) to “left” (west), so that the sequence is said “North, south, east, west.”



Simple and practical: these sentence patterns are just what you

need to get around easily in cities.

**Shū diàn zài dōng biān.**

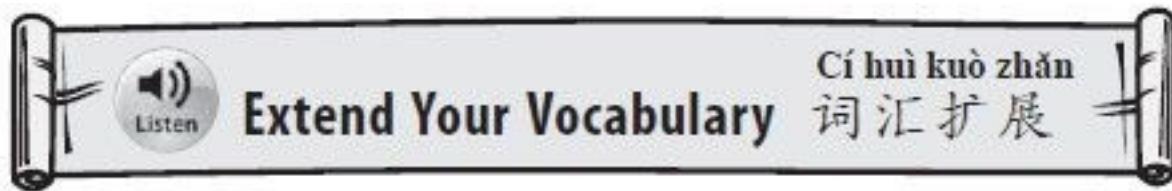
书店在东边。(The book store is in the east.)

**Yóu jú zài nán biān.**

邮局在南边。(The post office is in the south.)

**Yī yuàn zài běi biān.**

医院在北边。(The hospital is in the north.)



Don't think that the following words are only used for directions. As in English they also are used in people's names, school names, and other place names. The well-known Northwestern University in the U.S. is translated into “西北大学 **xī běi dà xué**” in Chinese.

<b>dōng</b>	<b>xī</b>	<b>nán</b>	<b>běi</b>	<b>dōng běi</b>
-------------	-----------	------------	------------	-----------------

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

东 east	西 west	南 south	北 north	东北 northeast
nán běi 南北 north-south	xī běi 西北 northwest	dōng xī 东西 east-west	dōng nán 东南 southeast	páng biān 旁边 aside/beside



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Cè suǒ zài nà lǐ.

1. 厕所 在那里。

Yóu jú lǐ yǒu xǐ shǒu jiān ma?

- 邮局里有洗手间吗?

Zhè shì yī yuàn de wèi shēng jiān.

- 这是医院的卫生间。

Kàn dào hóng dēng, tíng yí tíng!

- 看到红灯, 停一停!

Kàn dào huáng dēng, děng yí děng!

- 看到黄灯, 等一等!

Kàn dào lǜ dēng, wǎng qián zǒu!

- 看到绿灯, 往 前 走!

Qù yī yuàn wǎng dōng zǒu.

2. 去医院 往 东 走。

Wǎng xī zhuǎn, nà shì xué xiào!

- 往 西 转, 那是学校!

Qù wǒ de gōng sī, wǎng běi zǒu.

- 去我的公司, 往 北 走。

Kàn, gōng yuán jiù zài páng biān.

- 看, 公 园 就在 旁 边。

Cóng shí zì lù kǒu, wǎng nán zǒu.

- 从 十字路口, 往 南 走。

Yòng pīn yīn zào jù

## B. Use Pinyin to Make Sentences

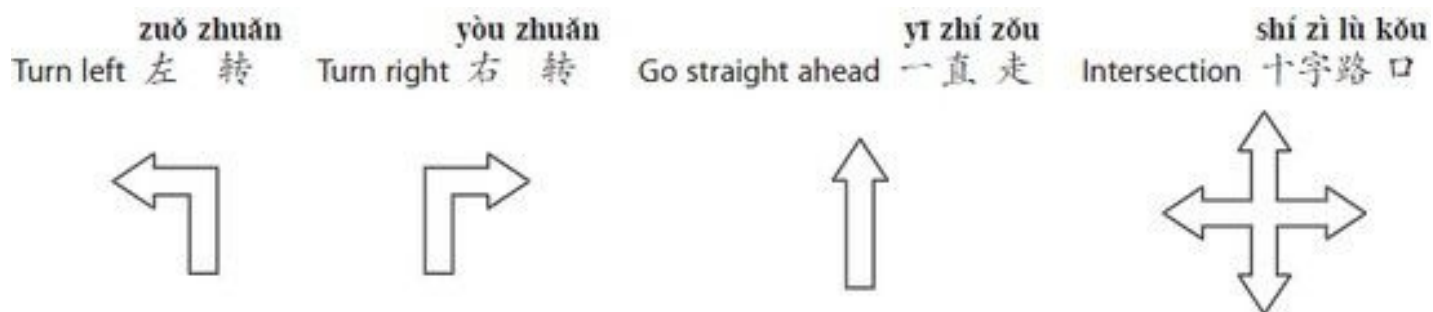
## 用拼音造句

Using the basic “How do I get to...” sentence below, first choose a starting location and a destination from the diagram, and ask how to go there. Next, use the 4 “Symbols” to say the directions to that destination.

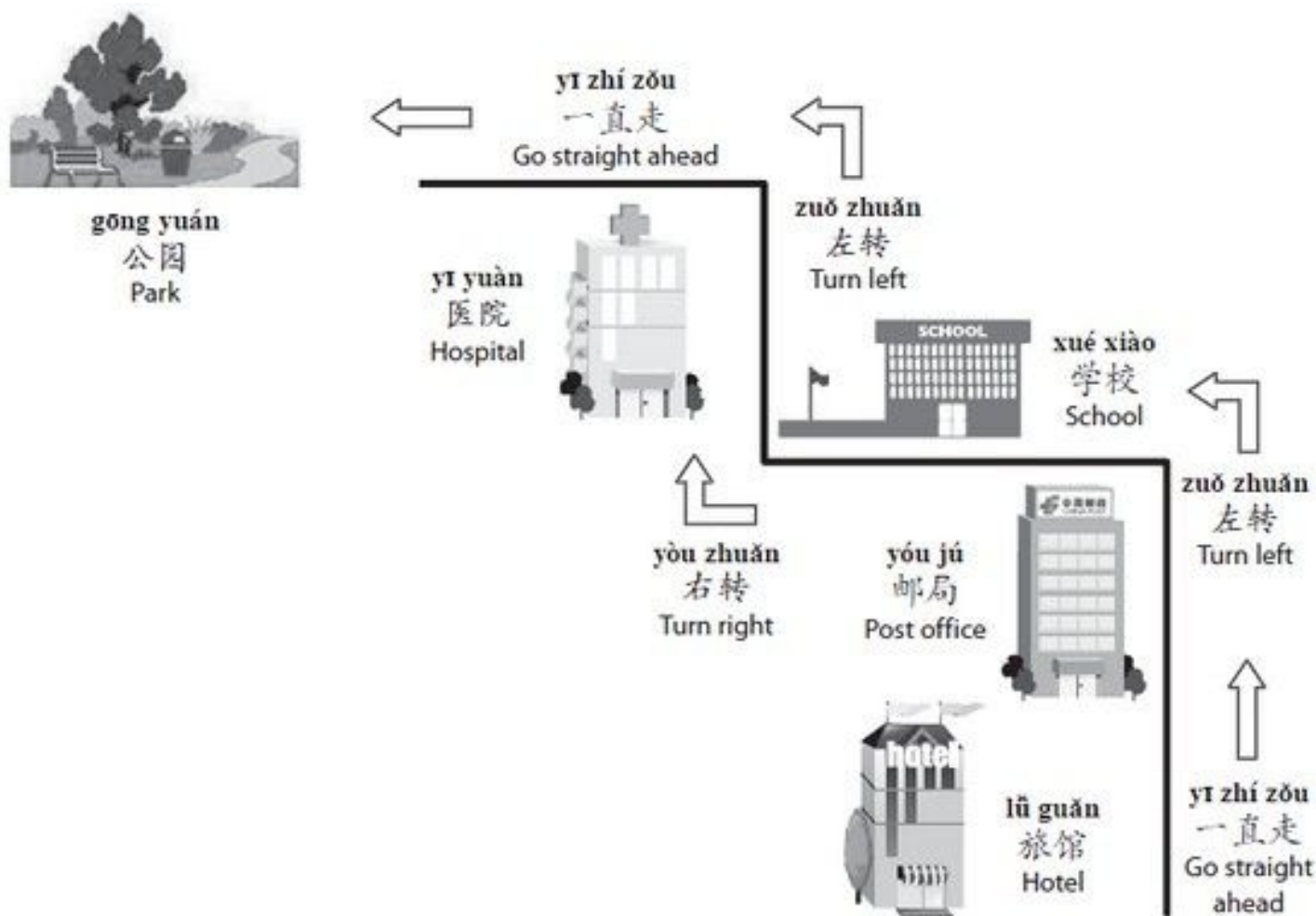
Follow this example:

How do I go to the park?      Turn left, and then go straight  
ahead.  
Qù gōng yuán zěn me zǒu?      Wǎng zuǒ zhuǎn, rán hòu  
yī zhí zǒu.

## 1) Symbols



## 2) Diagram



### 3) Compass

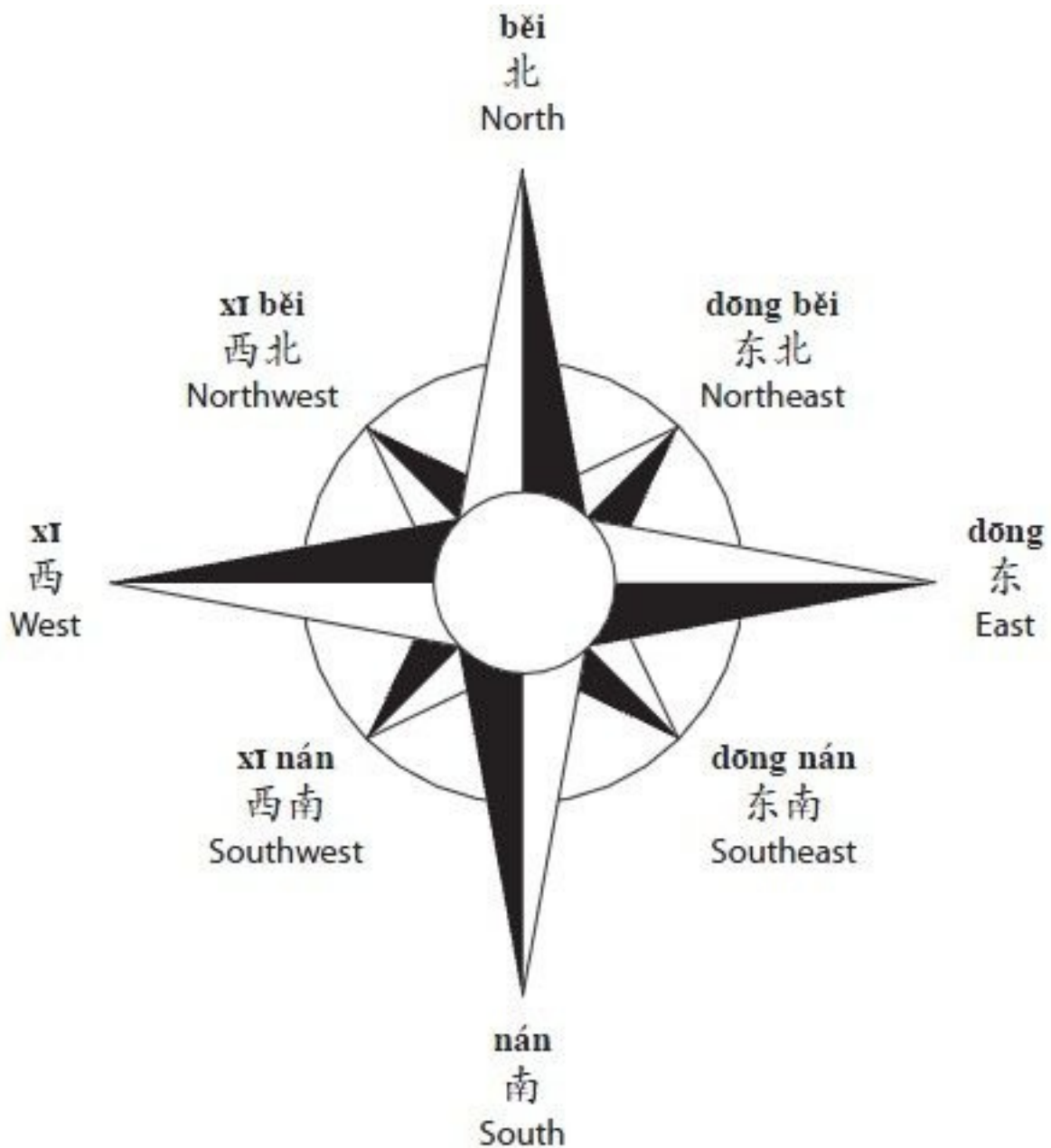
Look, here's a compass! It's lucky you have learned how to say compass directions. Let's practice!

Answer the below exercises by following the example.

Example:

The book store is at the south side of the hospital.

**Shū diàn zài yī yuàn de (nán biān).**



(1) My home is at the southeast side of the post office.

**Wǒ de jiā zài yóu jú de ( ).**

(2) His daughter's school is on the west side of Tian Tan park.

**Tā nǚ er de xué xiào zài tián tán gōng yuán ( ).**

(3) That tea house is at the northwest side of the big hotel.



Nà ge chá guǎn zài dà lǚ guǎn de ( ).

(4) This restaurant is at the east side of the Forbidden City.

Zhè jiā cǎn guǎn zài gù gōng de ( ).

Fān yì

## C. Translate 翻译

Translate the following sentences into pinyin.

1. Where is the bathroom? \_\_\_\_\_

2. How can I get to the book store?  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Where is Beijing Hospital? \_\_\_\_\_

4. How can I get to the National Stadium?  
\_\_\_\_\_

Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words you've learned. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you,

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

even better!

X: Where are you going?

**Nǐ qù nǎ lǐ?**

你去 哪里?

Y: I'm going to the book store. How about you?

**Wǒ qù shū diàn, nǐ ne?**

我 去 书 店, 你呢?

X: I'm going to Beijing University.

**Wǒ qù běi jīng dà xué.**

我 去 北 京 大 学。

Y: Where is Beijing University?

**Běi jīng dà xué zài nǎ lǐ?**

北 京 大 学 在 哪 里?

X: It's on the west side of Beijing.

**Zài běi jīng de xī biān.**

在 北 京 的 西 边。

Zhōng wén huā xù

**TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

## **Flourishing Buddhism in China**

No matter where you go in China, whether you're in big cities

or small towns, you'll see Buddhist temples. If you walk into one you may observe people burning incense and offering prayers to Buddha. Don't be surprised when you see teenagers bowing to pray in front of a statue of Buddha. These kids, and their parents as well, are likely to burn their very best incense while praying to pass the college entrance exams.

Buddhism was banned during the cultural revolution. But during the last 30 to 40 years it has been flourishing again in China, alongside the fast-growing economy.



Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism are considered by Chinese historians to be the three largest influences on Chinese culture. Buddhism was introduced to China from India, starting

around the year 1 or 2 CE. Indian Buddhism was modified as it was adopted by Chinese people, of course, and it was absorbed into the Chinese culture and passed along from generation to generation. It was during the Tang Dynasty (618–907) that Chinese Buddhism reached its peak of power and influence in China.

Buddhism deeply influences Chinese politics, philosophy, literature, arts, psychology, medicine, and many other areas of life. Today, of course, aspects of Buddhism have become popular in western countries too; yoga, which is a Buddhist practice, is one example.

## For Your Enjoyment

In ancient times, the roads and the waterways served as the most important connections between two places. There are many Chinese idioms and sayings containing the word 路 **lù**, “road.” Here are three of them.



一路平安 **Yī lù píng ān** (a saying): Have a safe trip!

条条大路通罗马 **Tiáo tiáo dà lù tōng luó mǎ** (a saying): There are many ways to reach your goals.

行千里路，读万卷书 **Xíng qiān lǐ lù, dú wàn juǎn shū** (a saying): To travel thousands of miles is equivalent to reading ten thousand books. (*in terms of expanding your view*)

In addition to roads, boats were a main mode of travel in the Tang Dynasty, during the days of Li Bai (701–762). In this poem he describes his emotions while seeing off his close friend. Chinese like this poem so much that they often hang it up on the wall, written in calligraphy.



# ON SEEING OFF HIS FRIEND MENG HAO RAN AT YELLOW CRANE TOWER

by Li Bai

Old friend, you departed from me  
at the Yellow Crane Terrace,  
To visit Yang Zhou during the misty month  
when flowers bloom.  
Your sail becomes a tiny shadow,  
then merges with the blue sky,  
Until now I gaze only on the river,  
flowing on its way to heaven.

Huáng hè lóu sòng Mèng Hào Rán zhī guǎng líng  
黄 鹤 楼 送 孟 浩 然 之 广 陵

Lǐ Bái  
李 白

Gù	rén	xī	cí	huáng	hè	lóu,
故	人	西	辞	黄	鹤	楼，
yan	hua	sān	yuè	xià	yáng	zhōu.
烟	花	三	月	下	扬	州。
Gū	fān	yuǎn	yǐng	bì	kōng	jìn,
孤	帆	远	影	碧	空	尽，
wéi	jiàn	cháng	jiāng	tiān	jì	liú.
唯	见	长	江	天	际	流。

# Suggestions

- ✍ As a foreigner in China, you'll probably stand out: your high and large nose, your blue eyes, your light-colored or red or blond hair, and so on are quite different from Asians'. Any variation in hair color from the standard is something that people notice quickly! Sometimes when you're out in public people may ask you if you'll pose with them for a photo. This happens particularly if you're visiting parts of China where there are fewer foreign visitors. What should you do? Well, the fact is, people are just curious about foreigners' looks. They'll be quite happy and feel honored if you agree to take a picture with them.
- ✍ If you travel in some of China's less-developed areas, you'll need to bring cash with you. Restaurants, hotels, and shops in these areas accept cash only. In many of these regions, there are no ATM machines, no banks with currency exchange services, and no credit card readers. But you don't need carry too much cash, since the prices at restaurants and hotels will be lower than those in large cities.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What are four mountains in China that are famous for being considered sacred in Buddhism?
- ❷ What are four mountains in China that are famous for being considered sacred in Daoism?



## **See you later!**

How do you feel about your Chinese skills so far? Keep in mind that in this chapter, you have learned 49 new words along with some idioms, phrases, poems and culture tips about directions and traveling. Hope they will help you get to know China even better.

In the next chapter, you'll follow along with Jack to see the sights in the capital city, Beijing.

# CHAPTER 13

## 第十三章

Dì shí sān zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



# Sightseeing 逛风景 Guàng fēng jǐng

One Saturday, Lily's family takes Jack to see some famous sights in Beijing. Jack is very impressed by the juxtaposition of the ancient and modern styles of architecture and scenery.

In the dialogs ahead you will learn how to pronounce the names of these famous places, and how to describe them with simple sentences in casual conversations. Furthermore, you will get to know some things about the Beijing Opera, that one-of-a-kind combination of music, singing, dance, and theater.

Okay, I'd better not talk too much. We've got a lot of sightseeing to do!

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Jack: The Forbidden City is huge!

**Gù gōng zhēn dà ya!**

故 宫 真 大 呀 ！

Lily: Yes, it is.

**Shì, fēi cháng dà.**

是非常大。

Jack: The Summer Palace is so beautiful!

**Yí hé yuán tài měi la!**

颐和园太美啦!

Lily: It's really beautiful!

**Zhēn de shì hěn měi!**

真的是很美!

Jack: It also has a unique style.

**Yě hěn yǒu tè sè.**

也很有特色。

Lily: Yes, this is a Chinese style garden.

**Shì de, zhè shì zhōng guó shì yuán lín.**

是的,这是中国式园林。

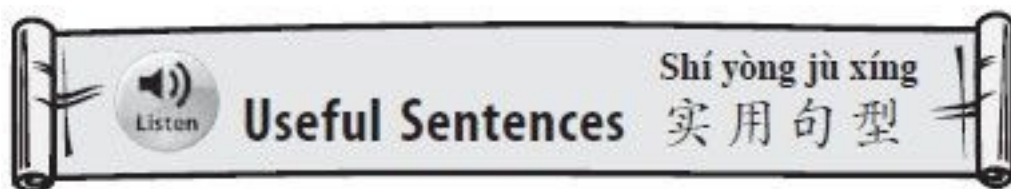




逛 guàng	look around
风景 fēng jǐng	scenery
故宫 gù gōng	Forbidden City
真 zhēn	real
大 dà	big
真大 zhēn dà	huge
呀 ya	ah (interjection)
非常 fēi cháng	very/greatly/ extraordinary
颐和园 yí hé yuán	Summer Palace
太 tài	extremely
美 měi	beautiful
啦 la	ah (interjection)
特色 tè sè	unique style
中国/式 zhōng guó/shì	China/style
中国式 zhōng guó shì	Chinese style
园林 yuán lín	garden



- ① The word 呀 **ya** shows emotion. Sometimes **ya** is placed in front of a sentence, and sometimes, it is put at the end. Two examples: “呀！这么大！**Ya! Zhè me dà!** (Wow, it’s so big!)” and “故宫 真大呀！**Gù gōng zhēn dà ya!** (The Forbidden City is huge!)”
- ② When you say 啦 **la** you are also expressing feeling. Most of time, **la** is placed at the end of sentences, as in “太美啦！**Tài měi la!** (It’s so beautiful!)”



The Forbidden City and the Summer Palace are two famous examples of Beijing’s historic architecture. The sentences below are very simple and are often used to describe these two places.

**Gù gōng zhēn dà.**

故 宫 真 大。

(How huge the Forbidden City is!)

**Gù gōng shì fēi cháng dà.**

故 宫 是 非 常 大。

(The Forbidden City is very big.)

**Yí hé yuán hěn dà yě hěn měi.**

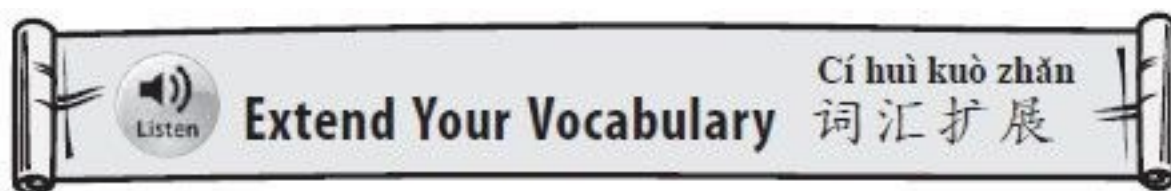
颐和园很大也很美。

(The Summer Palace is big and beautiful.)

**Zhè shì zhōng guó shì yuán lín.**

这是中国式园林。

(This is a Chinese style garden.)



Get familiar with the names of these places. They are well worth a visit.

<b>cháng chéng</b> 长城 Great Wall	<b>shí sān líng</b> 十三陵 Ming Tombs	<b>xiāng shān gōng yuán</b> 香山公园
--	--	-------------------------------------



		Fragrant Hills Park
<b>běi hǎi gōng yuán</b> 北海公园 Beihai Park	<b>tiān tán gōng yuán</b> 天坛公园 Temple of Heaven	<b>jǐng shān gōng yuán</b> 景山公园 Jingshan Park

Now that you've learned some words and sentences about its historic palaces and scenery, let's turn to Beijing's modern architecture.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 2**, move on to the Notes.



Lily: Have you ever been to the National Stadium?

**Nǐ qù guò niǎo cháo ma?**

你 去 过 鸟 巢 吗?

Jack: Yes, I've been there.

**Wǒ qù guò.**

我 去 过。

Lily: Do you like it?

**Nǐ xǐ huān ma?**

你喜 欢 吗?

Jack: Yes, I like the modern architectural style of the National Stadium.

**Wǒ xǐ huān niǎo cháo de xiàn dài jiàn zhù fēng gé.**

我 喜 欢 鸟 巢 的 现 代 建 筑 风 格。

Lily: How about the National Aquatics Center?

**Shuǐ lì fāng ne?**

水 立 方 呢?

Jack: I've been there.

**Qù guò.**

去 过。

Lily: How about the National Grand Theater?

**Guó jiā dà jù yuàn ne?**

国 家 大 剧 院 呢?

Jack: I've been there, too.

**Wǒ yě qù guò.**

我 也 去 过。

Lily: The evening view there is so beautiful!

Tā de yè jǐng tài měi le!  
它的夜景太美了!



去过 qù guò	have been/ have gone
鸟巢 niǎo cháo/ 国家体育场 guó jiā tǐ yù chǎng	National Stadium
现代 xiàn dài	modern
水立方 shuǐ lì fāng/ 国家游泳中心 guó jiā yóu yǒng zhōng xīn	National Aquatics Center
国家大剧院 guó jiā dà jù yuàn	National Grand Theater
它 tā	it
夜景 yè jǐng	night view
建筑 jiàn zhù	architecture



- ① 过 **Guò** is an aspect particle which is usually put after a verb to indicate that an action (has) occurred. For example: “我去过北京 **Wǒ qù guò běi jīng** (I have been in Beijing).” Here, 去 **qù** is a verb; 去过 **qù guò** means “have been,” “have gone.”
- ② The Beijing National Stadium and the National Aquatics Center were built for the 2008 Beijing Summer Olympic Games. Because of the way these landmarks look, Chinese prefer to call the National Stadium the “Bird’s Nest,” 鸟巢 **niǎo cháo**, and the National Aquatics Center the “Water Cube,” 水立方 **shuǐ lì fāng**. A famous American swimming athlete, Michael Phelps, won eight gold medals in the “Water Cube” at the 2008 Beijing Olympics.
- ③ The National Grand Theater is the biggest performing art center in Beijing. It’s located near Tian An Men Square.



Practicing these sentences will add to your conversation skills.

**Nǐ qù guò niǎo cháo ma?**

你 去 过 鸟 巢 吗? (Have you ever been to the Bird's Nest?)

---

**Wǒ xǐ huān guó jiā dà jù yuàn.**

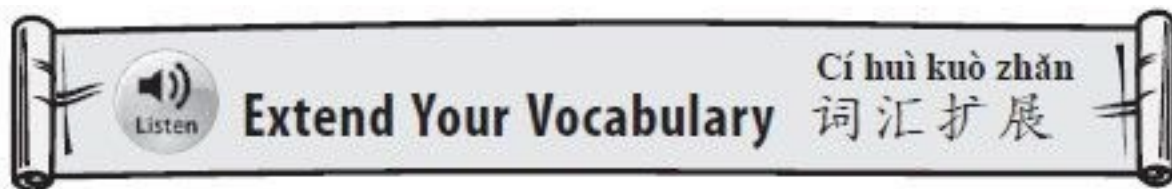
我 喜 欢 国 家大剧 院。 (I like the National Grand Theater.)

---

**Běi jīng de yè jǐng tài měi le!**

北 京 的夜 景 太 美 了! (The evening view of Beijing is so beautiful!)

---



Here are some other places that many people—you may be one of them—like to visit.

**tǐ yù guǎn**

体育馆

**yóu yǒng guǎn**

游泳馆

**bó wù guǎn**

博物馆

stadium	indoor swimming pool	museum
tú shū guǎn 图书馆 library	měi shù guǎn 美术馆 art gallery	shuǐ zú guǎn 水族馆 aquarium



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Wǒ qù guò cháng chéng.

1. 我去过 长 城.

Wǒ xǐ huān tǐ yù guǎn.

2. 我喜 欢 体 育 馆.

Tā zuò qì chē qù xiāng shān gōng yuán.

• 他坐汽车去 香 山 公 园.

Wǒ men qù guò běi hǎi hé jǐng shān gōng yuán.

• 我们去过 北 海 和 景 山 公 园.

Tiān tán gōng yuán zài běi jīng de nán biān.

• 天 坛 公 园 在 北 京 的 南 边.

Yóu yǒng guǎn zài nà lǐ, shuǐ zú guǎn zài zhè lǐ.

• 游 泳 馆 在 那 里, 水 族 馆 在 这 里.

Běi jīng tú shū guǎn zhēn dà.

• 北 京 图 书 馆 真 大.

Běi jīng měi shù guǎn hé bó wù guǎn yě hěn dà.

• 北 京 美 术 馆 和 博 物 馆 也 很 大.

Kàn tú shuō zhōng  
wén

## B. See Pictures and Speak Chinese

## 看图说中 文

Match each Chinese place name to the corresponding picture.

yí hé yuán  
颐和园

gù gōng  
故宫

niǎo cháo  
鸟巢

běi jīng dà xué  
北京大学

cháng chéng  
长城



Great Wall



Peking University



Forbidden City



Summer Palace



Bird's Nest

Xuǎn zé zhèng què dān cí



## C. Choose the Correct Words

## 选择正确单词

Choose the correct Chinese word to match each of the underlined English words.

nà lǐ	xǐ	qù	yě qù	gù	niǎo	yí hé
yǒu	huān	guò	guò	gōng	cháo	yuán
那里有	喜欢	去过	也去过	故宫	鸟巢	颐和园

Beijing is a beautiful city. There are a lot of interesting places to go.

Jack has been to the Summer Palace and the Forbidden City.

He also has gone to the Bird's Nest. He likes all of them.

Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog will help you get more familiar with the words you've learned. Consider the following situation, imagine yourself as person X, and practice person X's part. Then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, even better!

X: Have you ever been to the Forbidden City?

**Nǐ qù guò gù gōng ma?**

你 去 过 故 宫 吗?

Y: Yes, I've been to the Forbidden City and the Summer Palace.

**Wǒ qù guò gù gōng hé yí hé yuán.**

我 去 过 故 宫 和 颐 和 园。

X: How do you like them?

**Nǐ xǐ huān ma?**

你 喜 欢 吗?

Y: I like them very much! They are really beautiful!

**Wǒ fēi cháng xǐ huān! Tā men zhēn shì tài měi le!**

我 非 常 喜 欢! 它 们 真 是 太 美 了!

Zhōng wén huā xù

## **TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

### **Beijing Opera**

If you've experienced Beijing Opera, 京剧 **jīng jù**, you understand how different it is from western opera. The Chinese people are very proud of Beijing Opera, and consider it to be one of the treasures of their culture.

Beijing Opera was originally performed only for the Chinese court; after the Qing Dynasty (1644–1912) it gradually

started to be performed in public. As it developed, it drew elements from many styles of regional Chinese opera, mixing characteristics of **huī jù** (“Hui Play”) with those of **hàn jù** (“Han Play”), and it also absorbed arias from two historic types of Chinese opera, **kūn qǔ** and **qíng qiāng**. Eventually, this resulted in a sort of “best of” mix of Chinese opera styles, the one-of-a-kind art we recognize today as Beijing Opera.



Beijing Opera is a performing art that blends singing, dancing, dialog, and martial arts. There are four major roles: 生, 旦, 淨, 丑 **shēng, dàn, jìng, chǒu** (Sheng, Dan, Jing, and Chou). Sheng is the leading actor, Dan is the female role, Jing usually is a male and Chou represents wit, alertness or humor.

The most striking thing for many who have watched Beijing Opera is its colorful facial painting and elaborate costumes. Because each type of facial makeup is associated

with a specific role, people can recognize at a glance which role each actor plays. For example, the color red denotes uprightness and loyalty; white stands for cattiness or craftiness; and black indicates characters of integrity.

There have been many well-known master players in Beijing Opera. Among them, 梅兰芳 **Méi lán fāng** (Mei Lan Fang), 程砚秋 **Chéng yàn qiū** (Cheng Yan Qiu), 尚小云 **Shàng xiǎo yún** (Shang Xiao Yun), and 荀慧生 **Xún huì shēng** (Xun Hui Sheng) were famous “Dan” performers.

## For Your Enjoyment

From the following three Chinese idioms, you can sense a little bit of the importance of nature’s beauty to the Chinese.



鸟语花香 **Niǎo yǔ huā xiāng** (an idiom): Birds singing and flowers giving forth fragrance. *(Chinese like to use this idiom to describe the early spring, full of life and vigor.)*

世外桃源 **Shì wài táo yuán** (an idiom): A place of peace and natural beauty far away from the turmoil of the world is a place people dream of.

人杰地灵 **Rén jié dì líng** (an idiom): Remarkable places generate outstanding people.

This poem was written by the well-known Tang Dynasty

(618–907) poet Du Fu. From only twenty words, you can sense how beautiful the spring is. Enjoy!



## QUATRAIN (I)

by Du Fu

The river and hills are lovely  
in the waning sunlight.  
The fragrance of flowers and grass  
is wafted on the spring breeze.  
The mud has thawed,  
and swallows soar around above  
The warm sand,  
where mandarin ducks are sleeping.

Jué jù èr shǒu (yī)

绝句二首 (一)

Dù Fǔ

杜甫

Chí rì jiāng shān lì,  
迟 日 江 山 丽,  
chūn fēng huā cǎo xiāng.  
春 风 花 草 香。  
Ní róng fēi yàn zǐ,  
泥 融 飞 燕 子,  
Shā nuǎn shuì yuān yāng.  
沙 暖 睡 鸳 鸯。

## Suggestions

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

📖 When you go sightseeing, you have to stay hydrated! In many parks, museums and historic sites, you can purchase bottled water. (A reminder: check that the bottle's cap has its original seal.) No matter how thirsty you are, avoid drinking tap water as much as you can! With the exception of fancy restaurants, in China most restaurants' waiters or waitresses probably will not bring you ice water automatically, because the norm is to serve hot tea. If you want ice water, you'll need ask for it (you learned how in Chapter 10), or else bring your own bottle of water.

📖 In the cities of China, many public restrooms are modern and clean, especially the ones found in airports, hotels, restaurants, museums, libraries, and parks. At some of them, you may have to pay a small amount of cash to use the restrooms. Toilet paper is provided there. But if you visit areas in the countryside, you'll want to carry toilet paper or tissue with you in case there is no toilet paper provided.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What are names of some popular and attractive hutongs to visit in Beijing?
- ❷ How many Chinese dynasties were there in all?

## See you later!

In this chapter, you've learned 44 new words and a little more about China's culture. Nice work!

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*



Although Beijing certainly has a lot to offer, you probably want to explore other historical spots and attractions outside Beijing. But wherever you go, you'll need money. You don't want to miss the next chapter, "At the Bank."

See you soon!

# CHAPTER 14

## 第十四章

Dì shí sì zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## At the Bank 在銀行 Zài yín háng

Jack wants to buy souvenirs for his wife and children. He goes to a bank to exchange currency and he also opens a new bank

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

account while he is in Beijing.

It's time for you to learn how to exchange U.S. currency for Chinese currency or vice versa, how to open a bank account in China, and how to deposit and withdraw money from China's banks. There are some interesting things to learn about China's paper money and the ways people talk about money. Of course, I'll provide you with a few common idioms regarding money and business. And you will find out what the Chinese people's favorite character is and why.

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Jack: I want to exchange one hundred U.S. dollars.

**Wǒ yào huàn yī bǎi měi yuán.**

我要换一百美元。

Teller: Okay. Please wait a moment.

**Hǎo de, qǐng děng yī xià.**

好的，请等一下。

Jack: Do you charge a service fee?  
**Nǐ men shōu shǒu xù fèi ma?**  
你们收手续费吗?

Teller: We don't charge a service fee.  
**Wǒ men bù shōu shǒu xù fèi.**  
我们不收手续费。

This is six hundred fifty yuan.  
**Zhè shì liù bǎi wǔ shí kuài.**  
这是六百五十块。

Please count it.  
**Qǐng shǔ yī xià.**  
请数一下。

Jack: It is correct. Thank you!  
**Méi cuò. Xiè xie!**  
没错。谢谢!





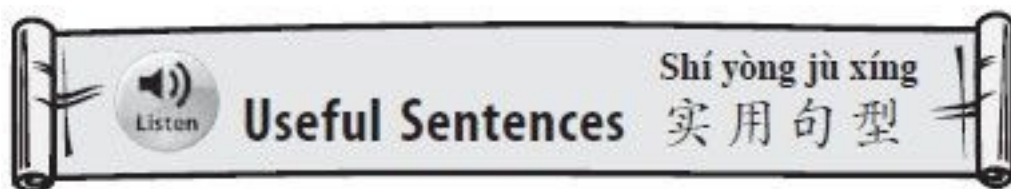
银行 yín háng	bank
换 huàn	exchange
美元 měi yuán	dollar
好的 hǎo de	okay
收 shōu	charge
手续费 shǒu xù fèi	service fee
块 kuài	yuan
数 shǔ	count
数一下 shǔ yī xià	count it
错 cuò	wrong
没错 méi cuò	correct



- ① Chinese currency, 人民币 **rén mín bì** (literally, “the people’s currency”), is divided into three basic categories: 元 **yuán**, 角 **jiǎo**, and 分 **fēn**. Ten **fēn** equals **yī jiǎo** and ten **jiǎo** equals **yī yuán**. These units are written on Chinese

currency.

- ② However, in spoken Chinese, people prefer to say “块 **kuài**” for 元 **yuán** and “毛 **máo**” for 角 **jiǎo**. “分 **Fēn**” doesn’t change though. Try saying ¥1.54: “**Yí kuài wǔ mǎo sì.**” And you say ¥35.70 as “**Sān shí wǔ kuài qī.**” The words “**mǎo**” and “**fēn**” can be omitted when they are at the end.



It’s a good idea to be sure you can speak these sentences fluently when you are in China.

**Nǐ yào huàn duō shǎo měi yuán?**

你要换多少美元? (How much [dollars] do you want to exchange?)

**Wǒ huàn liǎng bǎi měi yuán.**

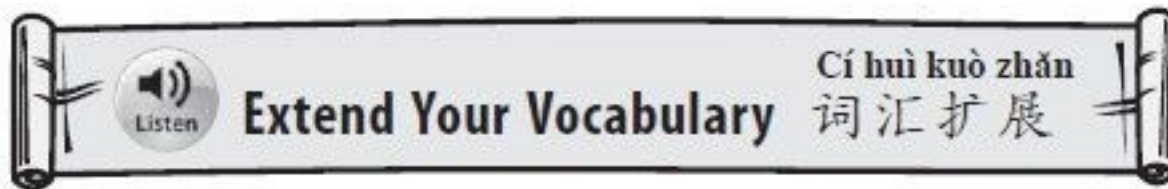
我换两百美元。(I want to exchange two hundred dollars.)

**Nǐ men shōu shǒu xù fèi ma?**

你们收手续费吗? (Do you charge a service fee?)

**Zhè shì sān bǎi èr shí wǔ kuài liù máo qī.**

这是三百二十五块六毛七。(This is ¥325.67.)



Since the words for money are different in spoken and written Chinese, here I've listed them side by side. Along with them, there are a few other countries' currencies you may want to be able to say in Chinese.

<b>rén mín bì</b> <b>人民币</b> RMB currency	<b>yuán kuài</b> <b>元 = 块</b> yuan Tip: think "dollar"	<b>jiǎo máo</b> <b>角 = 毛</b> (10 jiao equals 1 yuan) Tip: think "dime"	<b>fēn</b> <b>分</b> (10 fen equals 1 jiao) Tip: think "cent"
<b>měi yuán</b> <b>美元</b> dollar	<b>yīng bàng</b> <b>英镑</b> pound	<b>ōu yuán</b> <b>欧元</b> euro	

You've learned how to deal with money exchanging in Chinese. Now, you'll learn how to open a bank account in China.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish **New Words 2**, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.





Jack: I would like to open an account.

**Wǒ yào kāi yī gè zhàng hù.**

我要开一个帐户。

Teller: Is it a current deposit account or a term deposit?

**Nǐ yào kāi huó qī hái shì dìng qī?**

你要开活期还是定期?

Jack: A current deposit account, please.

**Wǒ yào kāi huó qī.**

我要开活期。

Teller: Do you have your photo ID with you?

**Nǐ yǒu zhèng jiàn ma?**

你有证件吗?

Jack: Yes. Here you are.

**Yǒu, gěi nǐ.**

有，给你。

Teller: How much do you want to deposit?

**Nǐ yào cún duō shǎo qián?**

你要存多少钱?

Jack: I want to deposit three hundred yuan.

**Wǒ yào cún sān bǎi kuài.**

我要存三百块。

Teller: This is your account book.

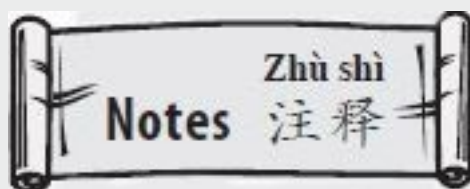
**Zhè shì nǐ de cún zhé.**

这是你的存折。

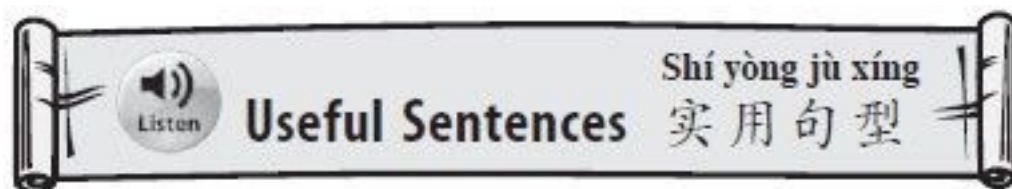


开 kāi	open
个 gè	a measure word
帐户 zhàng hù	account
活期 huó qī	current deposit
还是 hái shì	or
定期 dìng qī	term deposit
证件 zhèng jiàn	photo ID
给 gěi	give
给你 gěi nǐ	here you are

存 <b>cún</b>	deposit
多少 <b>duō shǎo</b>	how much
钱 <b>qián</b>	money
存折 <b>cún zhé</b>	account book



- ① The verb 要 **yào** accomplishes different functions in different sentences. In this chapter, it expresses a wish of the speaker; think of Jack's statement, "**Wǒ yào kāi zhàng hù** (I want to open an account)." Its antonym is 不要 **bú yào**. For example, you could say "**Wǒ bú yào cún sān bǎi kuài** (I don't want to deposit three hundred yuan)."
- ② The current deposit account, 活期 **huó qī**, is similar to a savings account; you can deposit or withdraw money at any time you want. The term deposit account, 定期 **dìng qī**, is similar to a certificate of deposit (CD) account; you have to keep money in the account for a longer period of time, for example, half a year, one year, or even longer.



Do you want to open a bank account? Do you want to deposit money at your bank when you're in China? No doubt these sentences will help you out!

**Wǒ xiǎng kāi yī gè zhàng hù.**

我想开一个帐户。(I would like to open an account.)

---

**Huó qī hái shì dìng qī?**

活期还是定期?(Is it a current deposit or a term deposit?)

---

**Wǒ yào cún sān bǎi kuài.**

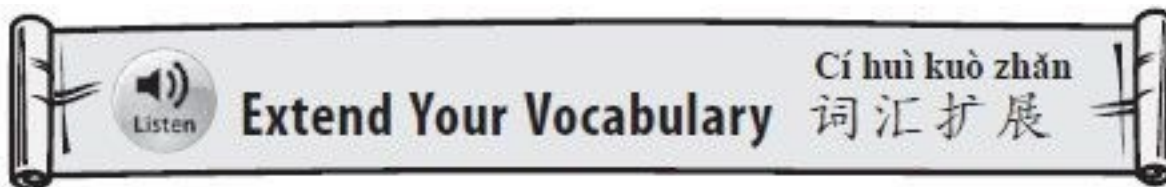
我要存三百块。(I want to deposit three hundred yuan.)

---

**Zhè shì nǐ de cún zhé.**

这是你的存折。(This is your bank account book.)

---



These new words are ones you'll probably frequently use in talking about money issues.

<b>cún kuǎn/cún qián</b> 存款/存钱 deposit money	<b>qǔ kuǎn/qǔ qián</b> 取款/取钱 withdraw money	
<b>lì xī</b> 利息 interest	<b>lì lǜ</b> 利率 rate	<b>duì huàn lǜ</b> 兑换率 exchange rate

Here you will learn about withdrawing money in Chinese.

Listen to **New Words 3** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 3**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 3**, move on to the Notes.



Jack: I would like to withdraw fifty yuan.

**Wǒ yào qǔ wǔ shí kuài qián.**

我要取五十块钱。

Teller: No problem.

**Méi wèn tí.**

没问题。

Jack: This is my bank book.  
**Zhè shì wǒ de cún zhé.**  
这是我的存折。

Teller: Here is the money you want. Please count it.  
**Zhè shì nǐ de qián, qǐng diǎn yī xià.**  
这是你的钱，请点一下。

Jack: It is correct. Thank you!  
**Méi cuò. Xiè xie!**  
没错。谢谢！

Jack: May I ask if that is an ATM machine?  
**Qǐng wèn, nà shì qǔ kuǎn jī ma?**  
请问，那是取款机吗？

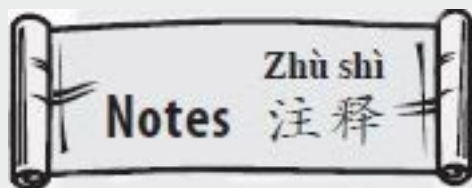
Teller: Yes, it is. The way you use it is exactly the same as you do in America.  
**Shì de, nà shì qǔ kuǎn jī. Tā de yòng fǎ hé**  
是的，那是取款机。它的用法和  
**měi guó de ATM yī yàng.**  
美国的ATM一样。

Jack: Thank you so much!

**Fēi cháng gǎn xiè!**  
**非常感谢!**



取钱/取款 qǔ qián/qǔ kuǎn	withdraw money
点 diǎn	count
问题 wèn tí	problem
没问题 méi wèn tí	no problem
取款机 qǔ kuǎn jī	ATM (automatic teller machine)
用法 yòng fǎ	use/usage





- ① The word 点 **diǎn** has different meanings in different situations. In the sentence “Please count it” 请点一下 **Qǐng diǎn yí xià**, the word 点 **diǎn** means “count.”
- ② You may note that the sentence for “Please count it” is written as 请数一下 **Qǐng shǔ yí xià** in Dialog 1, but it is written as 请点一下 **Qǐng diǎn yí xià** in Dialog 3. Both Chinese versions are correct. Although both **shǔ** and **diǎn** do have other meanings, here these two words mean the same thing: “count.” When the word **shǔ** means “count” it is pronounced in the third tone. When it means something other than “count” it is pronounced with a different tone.



Withdrawals are a common reason that people go to a bank. The following sentences are very useful if you want to withdraw money.

**Wǒ yào qǔ sān bǎi wǔ shí kuài.**

我要取三百五十块。

(I want to withdraw three hundred and fifty yuan.)

**Nà shì qǔ kuǎn jī.**

那是取款机。

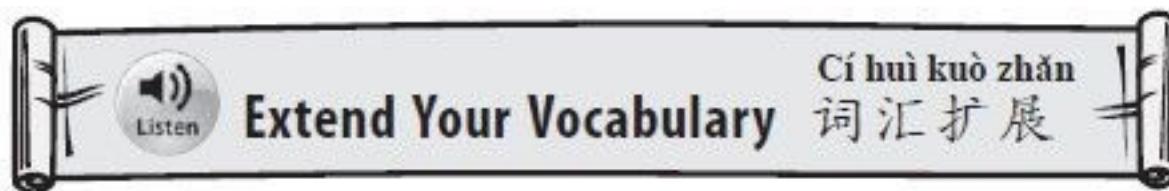
(That is an ATM machine.)

Nǐ yào qǔ qián, méi wèn tí.

你要取钱, 没问题。

(It's no problem that you want to withdraw money.)

---



Here you can practice a few more words related to banking and the names of some large banks.

<b>yín háng</b> 银行 bank	<b>yín háng jiā</b> 银行家 banker	<b>huā qí yín háng</b> 花旗银行 Citibank
<b>měi guó yín háng</b> 美国银行 Bank of America	<b>zhōng guó rén mín yín háng</b> 中国人民银行 People's Bank of China	<b>zhōng guó yín háng</b> 中国银行 Bank of China



Now let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the **Answer Key** in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section **Extend Your Vocabulary**. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in **Extend Your Vocabulary** and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Try substituting, to understand some ways you can use your new words.



Wǒ yào huàn qián.

1. 我要 换 钱。

Wǒ yào cún qián.

2. 我要 存 钱。

Zhè shì huā qí yín háng.

3. 这是 花旗 银 行。

Měi yuán hé rén mín bì de duì huàn lǜ shì duō shǎo?

• 美 元 和 人 民 币 的 兑 换 率 是 多 少?

Yīng pāng hé ōu yuán de duì huàn lǜ shì duō shǎo?

• 英 镑 和 欧 元 的 兑 换 率 是 多 少?

Dìng qī cún kuǎn de lì xī shì duō shǎo?

• 定 期 存 款 的 利 息 是 多 少?

Wǒ cún liù bǎi kuài dào huó qī cún kuǎn lǐ.

• 我 存 六 百 块 到 活 期 存 款 里。

Jié kè yào qù měi guó yín háng cún qián.

• 杰 克 要 去 美 国 银 行 存 钱。

Zhōng guó yín háng zài nà biān.

• 中 国 银 行 在 那 边。

Wǒ yào qù zhōng guó rén mín yín háng.

• 我 要 去 中 国 人 民 银 行。

Xuǎn zé lián xiàn

## B. Connect the Sentences 选择连线

Connect each sentence with the correct pinyin.

1) I want to deposit money.

a) Qǐng děng yī xià

2) Please wait a minute.

b) Hái yǒu duō shǎo qián

3) How much money is left?

c) Wǒ yào kāi zhàng hù

4) I want to open an account.

d) Wǒ yào cún qián

## C. Recognize the Money 看图认钱

There are some similarities and differences you'll notice right away between Chinese paper money and U.S. paper money. Both countries have bills for one, two, five, ten, twenty, fifty, and one hundred. The difference is that the size and color of the U.S. paper bills are all the same regardless of the money value of the bill, while Chinese paper bills are different in size and color depending on the money value of the bill.

For example, the size of a 100-yuan bill is bigger than that of a 10-yuan bill; the size of a 10-yuan bill is bigger than that of a 1-yuan bill. In other words, the more value a bill holds, the bigger the dimensions of that bill. The different color of each bill makes it easier for people to recognize the different values.

Like the U.S., China also has metal coins: one fen, five fen, and twenty-five fen. There's also a one-yuan coin.





20 yuán = 20 kuài



50 yuán = 50 kuài



100 yuán = 100 kuài



1 yuán = 1 kuài



5 yuán = 5 kuài



10 yuán = 10 kuài



1 jiǎo = 1 máo



2 jiǎo = 2 máo



5 jiǎo = 5 máo

## TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮

### Chinese People's Favorite Character

How many characters are in the Chinese language? There are multi-thousands. Who cares what the exact number is, because there are just too many. Among all these characters, 福 **fú** is the most beloved and the oldest Chinese character. Chinese just love the character 福 **fú**! Why? Because 福 **fú** encompasses five main meanings relating to a happy life. It implies good health, a long life, a wealthy life, a peaceful life, and an optimistic mind. These five kinds of happiness are what Chinese strive for in their lives.



In China, especially during the Chinese New Year season, wherever you go you'll see the word 福 **fú** written in gold on a piece of diamond-shaped bright red paper, and hung on the



front door. People hope this will help bring good fortune and luck through the door to them for the new year ahead. Sometimes, you may see the word 福 **fú** affixed upside down. Don't think that it's a mistake. People do this on purpose, because the Chinese pronunciation of "upside down" (福 **fú**) sounds similar to "luck comes" (福到 **fú dào**), so that makes things even luckier. In the U.S., too, the word 福 **fú** hung upside down can be frequently seen in Chinese stores and restaurants.

Can you believe that this single word "福 **fú**" has been written in hundreds and thousands of different styles, in works like "pictures of one hundred 福 **fú**" and "pictures of one thousand 福 **fú**"? In addition, 福 **fú** is often seen in Chinese paper cuttings, cloth, paintings, and porcelains. Without a doubt, we all need more 福 **fú** (luck) in our lives, right?

## For Your Enjoyment

How should people do business? Through the ages, of course, different people have had different principles and philosophies. There were many sayings about this subject in ancient China, and many are still widely believed by Chinese today. Here are a few for you to enjoy.



诚信为本 **Chéng xìn wéi běn** (a proverb): Honesty and trust are essential principles.

薄利多销 **Báo lì duō xiāo** (a proverb): Products with low cost can be sold more and generate more revenues.

君子爱财，取之有道 **Jūn zǐ ài cái, qǔ zhī yǒu dào** (a saying): Everyone likes money but must make it in a legal way.

Everyone, no matter how much money one may have in a bank account, can enjoy nature's priceless beauty. Here's a poem which describes a waterfall on the mountain Lu Shan, by the Tang (618–907) poet Li Bai.



## GAZING AT THE WATERFALL ON LU SHAN

by Li Bai

The sunlit Incense Summit  
is aglow within its mists,  
And the sunlight glistens  
from the river's stones.  
From on high,  
in three thousand feet of sparkling water,  
The Milky Way of Heaven  
steadily plunges from the sky.

Wàng lú shān pú bù  
望庐山瀑布

Lǐ Bái  
李白

Rì	zhào	xiāng	lú	shēng	zǐ	yān,
日	照	香	炉	生	紫	烟，
yáo	kàn	pú	bù	guà	qián	chuān.
遥	看	瀑	布	挂	前	川。
Fēi	liú	zhí	xià	sān	qiān	chǐ,
飞	流	直	下	三	千	尺，
yí	shì	yín	hé	luò	jiǔ	tiān.
疑	是	银	河	落	九	天。

## Suggestions

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

📌 In many Chinese cities, riding the bus usually costs 一块 **yī kuài** (one yuan) for a one-way trip. Most buses have a small machine beside the driver to collect fares. If you would like to take buses around the city, you'd better have multiple one-yuan bills or coins. In the U.S., if people need to take more than one bus to get somewhere, they don't need to purchase a ticket on every bus...they simply purchase one ticket on the first bus and ask for a transfer, so that they can use that transfer ticket to ride on the second or third bus for free within the same day. Unlike the U.S., there is no transfer ticket offered in the bus system in China. People have to buy a ticket on every bus they take.

📌 Should I change some money into Chinese currency before I leave for China? Many people ponder this question when they plan their trip. Generally speaking, yes, you should arrange to have some Chinese currency in hand before leaving your country for China. However, if you don't have time or forget to do so, don't worry. There are currency exchange services at the airports of China's large cities, such as Beijing International Airport and Shanghai Pudong International Airport. You can also exchange your currency for Chinese currency at large local banks. Nowadays, many large Chinese hotels, shopping centers and restaurants accept payment via your credit card (but be careful of the currency-conversion fees that your card issuer may tack on). Some even accept popular foreign currencies like U.S. dollars or Euros. We suggest that you prepare at least a small amount of Chinese currency (perhaps a couple of hundred yuan) before you go to China. Once you are there, you can exchange more based on

your needs. A tip: the overall exchange rate is usually better in China than in the United States, since in China the service charge is less.

## **Do You Know?**

- ❶ What are the names of four commercial banks in China?
- ❷ What format was used for Chinese money in older times, before bills and coins?

## **See you later!**

Well, now you know some interesting features of Chinese money. You also have the vocabulary to be able to open a bank account and to deposit and withdraw money. Along with facts about money and Chinese culture, you've learned 48 new words.

Now that you know how to get money from a bank, what do you want to do next? How about we go shopping?



# CHAPTER 15

## 第十五章

Dì shí wǔ zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



## Shopping 购物 Gòu wù

There are several popular markets in Beijing where you can find quality goods for low prices. Jack is in one of these markets, Silk

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

Street, bargaining with a saleswoman in Chinese. Jack figures that it's the perfect opportunity to practice his Chinese, so he bargains for lower prices, asks for different items, and discusses the colors of clothes. He also speaks Chinese when he buys fruits and vegetables in Beijing.

In this chapter you will learn how to say and use shopping words, phrases, and sentences, as well as learn (of course!) some insights about China's culture.

Here you'll learn how to use Chinese to shop for clothes. (There's one sentence that is favored by many foreign students, because they like to bargain!)

Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 1**, move on to the Notes.



Jack: How much is that red shirt?

**Nà jiàn hóng sè chèn yī zěn me mài?**

那 件 红 色 衬 衣 怎 么 卖?

Seller: Ninety-four yuan.

**Jiǔ shí sì kuài.**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*



九十四块。

Jack: That's too expensive! Can you lower the price?

**Tài guì le! Pián yi diǎn, hǎo ma?**

太贵了! 便宜点, 好吗?

Seller: How about seventy?

**Qī shí, zěn me yàng?**

七十, 怎么样?

Jack: It's still too expensive.

**Hái shì tài guì le.**

还是太贵了。

Seller: How much do you want to pay?

**Nǐ xiǎng gěi duō shǎo?**

你想给多少?

Jack: Fifty yuan.

**Wǔ shí kuài.**

五十块。

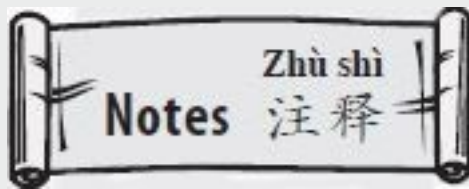
Seller: Okay! Fifty yuan!

**Hǎo ba, wǔ shí kuài!**

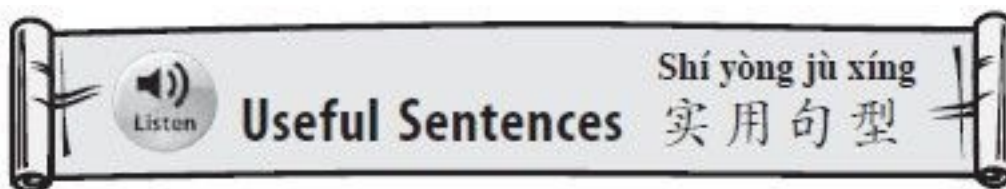
好吧, 五十块!



购物 gòu wù	shopping
那件 nà jiàn	that piece
红色 hóng sè	red color
衬衣 chèn yī	shirt
怎么 zěn me	how
卖 mài	sell
贵 guì	expensive
便宜 pián yi	cheap
怎么样 zěn me yàng	how about
还是 hái shì	still



- ① The adverb 太 **tài** means “too” in English. It is often used before an adjectival or a verbal predicate which is followed by 了 **le**—for example, 太贵了 **tài guì le** “too expensive” and 太大了 **tài dà le** “too big.”
- ② We can learn some new measure words here. Note that 件 **jiàn** in “那件衬衣怎么卖? **Nà jiàn chèn yī zěn me mài** (How much is that shirt?)” is a measure word for clothes. Another measure word, 条 **tiáo**, is for pants, shorts, or underwear; and the measure word 双 **shuāng** is for shoes or socks.



Do you want to buy some clothes in China? Well, these key sentences will help you.

**Nà jiàn chèn yī zěn me mài?**

那件衬衣怎么卖? (How much is that shirt?)

**Tài guì le! Pián yi diǎn, hǎo ma?**

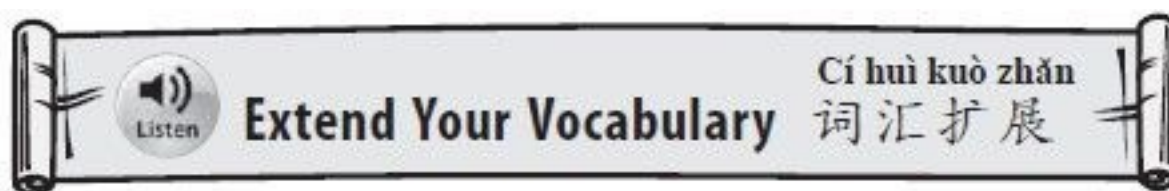
太贵了! 便宜点, 好吗? (That's too expensive! Can

you lower the price?)

**Nǐ gěi duō shǎo qián?**

**你给多少钱? (How much do you want to pay?)**

Tài guì le! Pián yi diǎn, hǎo ma?



Here's your chance to learn more words for clothes and colors, so you can make sentences to talk about whatever you need.

<b>chéng sè</b> 橙色 orange color	<b>huáng sè</b> 黄色 yellow	<b>lán sè</b> 蓝色 blue	<b>lǜ sè</b> 绿色 green	<b>zǐ sè</b> 紫色 purple	<b>bái sè</b> 白色 white	<b>huī sè</b> 灰色 gray	<b>hēi sè</b> 黑色 black
<b>máo yī</b> 毛衣 sweater	<b>jiá kè</b> 夹克	<b>kù zi</b> 裤子	<b>xī zhuāng</b> 西装	<b>qún zi</b> 裙子	<b>wài tào</b> 外套	<b>xié zi</b> 鞋子	<b>wà zi</b> 袜子

sweater			suit	skirt	coat		
---------	--	--	------	-------	------	--	--

Now let's turn to grocery shopping. In China, there are lots of great markets where you can buy fresh vegetables, meats and seafood.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 2** carefully, then follow along to speak each sentence. When you're satisfied with the way you read the dialog, move on to the next page.



Jack: How much is one jin of tomatoes?

**Xī hóng shì duō shǎo qián yī jīn?**

西红柿多少钱一斤?

Seller: One yuan and five mao for one jin.

**Yī kuài wǔ máo yī jīn.**

一块五毛一斤。

Jack: I want to buy two jin.

**Wǒ mǎi liǎng jīn.**

我买两斤。

How much is one jin of cucumbers?

**Huáng guā duō shǎo qián yī jīn?**

黄 瓜 多 少 钱 一 斤?

Seller: Eight mao.

**Bā máo yī jīn.**

八 毛 一 斤。

Jack: I'd like to buy one jin.

**Wǒ mǎi yī jīn.**

我 买 一 斤。

How much is the total?

**Yī gòng duō shǎo qián?**

一 共 多 少 钱?

Seller: Three yuan and eight mao.

**Sān kuài bā máo.**

三 块 八 毛。





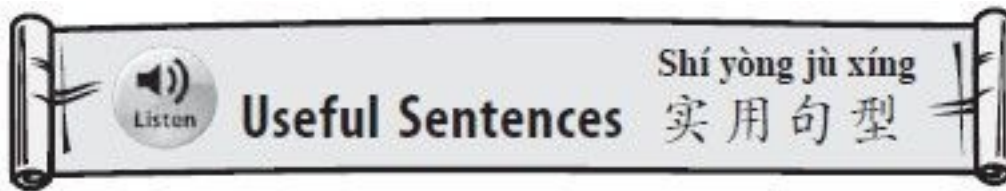
西红柿 xī hóng shì	tomato
多少 duō shǎo	how much/ how many
一斤 yī jīn	half kilogram
五毛 wǔ máo	fifty cents
买 mǎi	buy
黄瓜 huáng guā	cucumber
一共 yī gòng	total



- ① 多少 **Duō shǎo** is a common question phrase meaning “how many/how much.” Look again at what Jack said: “多少钱一斤? **Duō shǎo qián yī jīn?** (How much for one jin?)” Here’s another example: “你要多少苹果? **Nǐ yào duō shǎo píng guǒ?** (How many apples do you want?)” 多少 **Duō shǎo** is usually used when the expected number in the answer is more than 10. The word 几 **jǐ** is often used when the expected number is 10 or less.



- ② How important are the tones in spoken Chinese? The words 买 **mǎi** (“buy”) and 卖 **mài** (“sell”) which you’ve learned in this chapter are perfect examples! You noticed, of course, that 买 **mǎi** and 卖 **mài** are like unidentical twins; they have same spelling in pinyin, but different tones and different meanings.



Here are some key sentences to focus on. Practice them until they feel natural to you.

**Xī hóng shì duō shǎo qián yī jīn?**

西红柿多少钱一斤?

(How much is one jin of tomatoes?)

---

**Yī kuài sān máo yī jīn.**

一块三毛一斤。

(One yuan and three mao for one jin.)

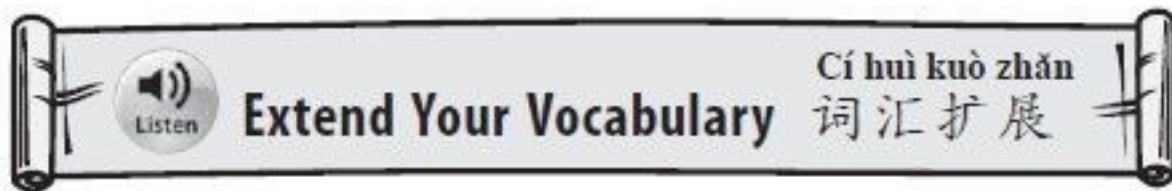
---

**Yī gòng duō shǎo qián?**

一共多少钱?

(How much is the total?)

---



Let's extend your diet, as well as your vocabulary! Below are words for some other common fruits and vegetables.

<b>shū cài</b> 蔬菜 vegetable	<b>xī lán huā</b> 西蓝花 broccoli	<b>hú luó bo</b> 胡萝卜 carrot	<b>qín cài</b> 芹菜 celery	<b>shēng cài</b> 生菜 lettuce	<b>bō cài</b> 菠菜 spinach
<b>shuǐ guǒ</b> 水果 fruit	<b>cǎo méi</b> 草莓 strawberry	<b>chéng zǐ</b> 橙子 orange	<b>píng guǒ</b> 苹果 apple	<b>xiāng jiāo</b> 香蕉 banana	<b>pú táo</b> 葡萄 grape



Let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare

your work with the [Answer Key](#) in the back of the book.

## Tì huàn liàn xí



### A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section Extend Your Vocabulary. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in Extend Your Vocabulary and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Go ahead and give it a try!



Nà jiàn máo yī tài guì le.

1. 那件 毛衣 太贵了。

Wǒ mǎi liǎng jīn huáng guā.

2. 我买两斤 黄 瓜。

Zhè jiàn hóng sè de chèn yī duō shǎo qián?

- 这件 红 色的 衬 衣多 少 钱?

Tā yào mǎi huī sè de xī zhuāng.

- 他要买 灰 色的 西 装。

Wǒ mǎi nà tiáo lán sè kù zi.

- 我买那条 蓝 色 裤 子。

Nǐ yào mǎi zhè shuāng bái sè de xié zi ma?

- 你要买这 双 白 色的 鞋 子吗?

Jié kè mǎi le yī jīn xī lán huā.

- 杰克买了一斤 西 兰 花。

Wǒ méi yǒu mǎi bō cài hé shēng cài.

- 我 没有买 菠 菜和 生 菜。

Tā xǐ huān chī píng guǒ hé xiāng jiāo.

- 他喜 欢 吃 苹 果和 香 蕉。

Nǐ tiān tiān chī shuǐ guǒ ma?

- 你天 天 吃 水 果 吗?

## B. Circle the Right Answer 选择正确答案

Circle the choice that best fits into the sentence.

Nà jiàn              zěn me mài?

1) 那件 ( ) 怎么卖?

xī hóng shì      píng guǒ      chèn yī      xiāng jiāo  
A. 西红柿    B. 苹果    C. 衬衣    D. 香蕉

Tài              le, pián yi diǎn, hǎo ma?

2) 太 ( ) 了, 便宜点, 好吗?

dà              duō              hǎo              guì  
A. 大              B. 多              C. 好              D. 贵

## C. Choose the Correct Words

## 选择正确单词

Choose the correct Chinese word to match each of the underlined English words.

Jack is standing in a farmer's market in Beijing. He bought the things on his list: tomatoes, broccoli, and celery. He also wanted to buy some fruit, so he bought apples, oranges and bananas. He didn't buy chicken—instead he bought one big fish. He spent a total of fifty yuan for the food.

píng guǒ	xī hóng shì	qín cài	chéng zi	yī tiáo dà yú
苹果	西红柿	芹菜	橙子	一条大鱼
xiāng jiāo	wǔ shí kuài	jī	xī lán huā	
香蕉	五十块	鸡	西兰花	

Liàn xí jiǎn dān duì huà

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog can further help you get familiar with the words you have learned. Imagine the following situation, and pretend yourself to be person X and practice person X's part; and then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, that will be great!

X: How much is that blue shirt?

Nà jiàn lán sè chèn yī zěn me mài?

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

那件蓝色衬衣怎么卖?

Y: Eighty-five yuan.

**Bā shí wǔ kuài.**

八十五块。

X: That's too expensive! Can you lower the price?

**Tài guì le! Pián yi diǎn, hǎo ma?**

太贵了! 便宜点, 好吗?

Y: Okay, sixty!

**Hǎo ba, liù shí!**

好吧, 六十!

Zhōng wén huā xù

## TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮

### The Cheongsam

The quintessential Chinese women's dress has long been considered the **cheongsam**, also called the **qí páo** (旗袍). Its style originated in the Qing Dynasty (1644–1911) during the rule of the Manchu ethnic group. Because the Manchu people were called “**qí rén**” (旗人) by the majority Han Chinese, the dress the Manchu women wore came to be called the **qí páo** (旗袍) or “banner gown.”



Those original **qí páo** were made wide and loose with long sleeves in order to completely cover and hide a woman's entire body. As time passed, the **qí páo**'s style changed. In Shanghai in the 1920s it underwent an extreme makeover: it became more form-fitting, and its style reflected the influence of western fashions. The **qí páo** was made to fit women's bodies closely as a one-piece dress, and styled to express their elegance and dignity. Some are floor length, and some are shorter. The **qí páo** has high slit on one side or both sides. It continued to be popular throughout the '30s and '40s.

Today many Chinese women like to choose high quality silk as **qí páo** material and bring it to their tailors, who will custom make a **qí páo** that's perfectly fit to each individual.



You may see Chinese women wearing **qí páo** on formal occasions, like weddings, parties, fashion shows, or beauty pageants. In recent years, the female employees of some hotels, restaurants, airports, etc. have adopted the **qí páo** as their uniform.

## For Your Enjoyment

Some people like to collect expensive items, and others are interested in finding bargain prices. But all of us want to buy things that have value for their price. Here are some examples of idioms which you hear often in China regarding value and bargains.



**无价之宝 Wú jià zhī bǎo** (an idiom): A priceless treasure/invaluable asset.

**讨价还价 Tǎo jià huán jià** (an idiom): To bargain/to haggle.

**货真价实 Huò zhēn jià shí** (an idiom): Genuine goods at a fair price.

The following poem also was sung as a song during the middle Tang dynasty (618–907) and is still quite well known today among Chinese. This poet advised people not to be obsessed with expensive clothes or other luxury items.



## GOLD-THREADED CLOTHES

by An Anonymous Poet

My advice to you is not to treasure  
your gold-threaded garments;  
Rather, you should treasure  
the bloom of your youth.  
Gather the flowers when  
they are still worth picking;  
Don't wait until the stems are bare of petals.

Jīn lǚ yī  
金缕衣

Wú míng shì  
无名氏

Quàn	jūn	mò	xī	jīn	lǚ	yī,
劝	君	莫	惜	金	缕	衣，
quàn	jūn	xī	qǔ	shào	nián	shí.
劝	君	惜	取	少	年	时。
Yǒu	huā	kān	zhé	zhí	xū	zhé,
有	花	堪	折	直	须	折，
mò	dài	wú	huā	kōng	zhé	zhī.
莫	待	无	花	空	折	枝。

## Suggestions

✍ We Chinese are frequently asked by western people, “Would you tell me what the Chinese word on my T-shirt means?” or “What does this character mean in my arm tattoo?” As we answer their questions, we understand that some westerners are fascinated by Chinese characters, since they think the characters look like art. But as you know, it’s best not to forget that the characters are a language, too—so be sure you know all the meanings of the word you choose before selecting that item of clothing or that tattoo! There are entire websites that document the Chinese-character mistakes people have had tattooed onto their skin. Interestingly, tattooing is, in general, viewed negatively by most Chinese. That may be because tattoos 纹身 wén shēn historically were used to mark criminals, bandits, and slaves in China; and maybe also because in Confucianism it’s believed that one shouldn’t defile one’s body in any way. On the other hand, there are strong traditions of tattooing among some of the many minority groups in China, like the Li, the Dulong, and the Dai.

✍ For visitors to China, bargaining when you shop is often a novelty. Lots of foreigners think that it is fun to bargain with sellers, and now you’re a step ahead. You can use your Chinese sentences, which might help you get even better prices, because vendors are likely to treat you warmly if you can speak their language. In the towns and cities of China where there are open-air markets selling clothes, shoes, bags, hats, paintings, crafts, and so on, you certainly can feel free to bargain. The prices there are much cheaper than in stores. But don’t get carried away: in almost all Chinese department stores, prices are set and cannot be bargained down.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What are the four famous embroideries in China?
- ❷ The “Four Treasures of the Study” relate to Chinese calligraphy. What are they?

## See you later!

Now you know dialogs, sentences, and 49 new words to help you with your shopping. Good work.

In addition to visiting Beijing, you probably want to explore other parts of China. So let's learn how to talk about different types of transportation, and how long it will take to reach the destination you have in mind.

Before we dive into these things in the chapter ahead, a little fresh air will probably do you good. I'll see you soon!

# CHAPTER 16

## 第十六章

Dì shí liù zhāng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).



# Transportation 交通 Jiāo tōng

Jack wants to see some of the historic and scenic places in China.



He's learning some Chinese phrases and sentences that will help him travel around.

In this chapter, you will learn the names of different kinds of public transportation, and how to recognize and say the stops or stations where you need to get on or get off. You will also learn how to ask about travel time.

Are you ready? Let's start!

First let's learn how to ask directions in Chinese, and how to go somewhere in a city by bus, subway or taxi.

There are lots of new words this time! Listen to **New Words 1** on the audio. Then read along with me, and repeat in the pauses provided. When you are familiar with all the new words, listen to **Dialog 1**, then follow along to speak each sentence of it. Once you feel comfortable with **Dialog 1**, move on to the Notes.



Jack: How can I get to the Forbidden City, please?

**Qǐng wèn, dào gù gōng zěn me zǒu?**

请问, 到故宫怎么走?

Lily: Take Bus No. 1.

**Chéng yī lù gōng gòng qì chē.**

乘一路公共汽车。

Jack: Which bus stop should I get off at?

**Dào nǎ er xià chē?**

到哪儿下车?

Lily: At Tian An Men station.

**Dào tiān ān mén zhàn xià chē.**

到天安门站下车。

Jack: How about taking the subway?

**Zuò dì tiě ne?**

坐地铁呢?

Lily: Also get off at Tian An Men station.

**Yě dào tiān ān mén zhàn xià.**

也到天安门站下。

Jack: Can I get there by taxi?

**Zuò chū zū chē ne?**

坐出租车呢?

Lily: That's okay too, but it's more expensive.

**Yě kě yǐ, jiù shì guì yī diǎn.**

也可以，就是贵一点。



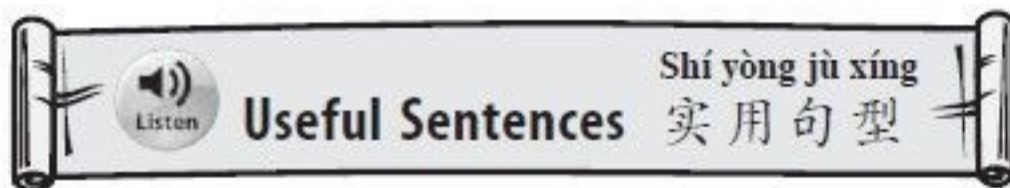


交通 jiāo tōng	transportation
到 dào	arrive
乘 chéng	get on
路 lù	road
公共 gōng gòng	public
汽车 qì chē	car
公共汽车 gōng gòng qì chē	bus
下 xià	down
下车 xià chē	get off
天安门 tiān ān mén	Tian An Men
站 zhàn	station
坐 zuò	sit/by/take
地铁 dì tiě	subway
出租车 chū zū chē	taxi

可以 kě yǐ	can/may/OK
就是 jiù shì	exactly/ precisely



- ① 到 **Dào** is a verb which means “to arrive” or “to arrive at.” When 到 **dào** combines with object words, it indicates “where to go” or “where to arrive,” for example, “到长城怎么走? **Dào cháng chéng zěn me zǒu?** (How can I get to the Great Wall?)”
- ② The Chinese word 路 **lù** means “road.” But in this chapter, you may notice the phrase “一路公共汽车 **yī lù gōng gòng qì chē** (No. 1 bus).” Here 一路 **yī lù** means “No. 1” rather than “road” and indicates the bus number.



You may look at the Chinese below and wonder whether these are sentences or phrases. Yes, these are sentences. In Chinese the subject word like “I,” “you,” or “he/she” is omitted when people talk face to face.

**Qǐng wèn, dào gù gōng zěn me zǒu?**

请问, 到故宫怎么走?

Would you tell me how to get to the Forbidden City?

---

**Zuò gōng gòng qì chē.**

坐公共汽车。

(You can take a bus.)

---

**Zuò dì tiě dào tiān ān mén.**

坐地铁到天安门。

(You can take the subway to Tian An Men.)

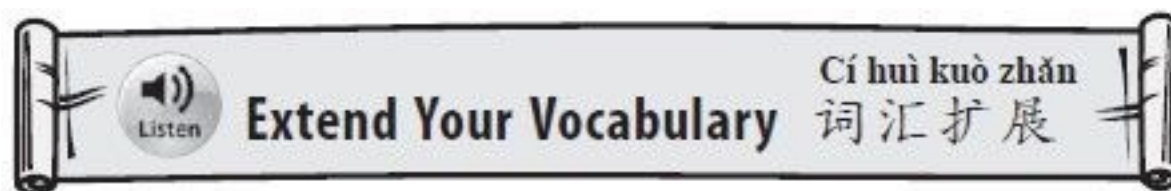
---

**Zài nǎ er xià chē?**

在哪儿下车?

(Where should I get off?)

---



Here are some new words related to transportation.

<b>qì chē</b> 汽车 car	<b>miàn bāo chē</b> 面包车 van	<b>pǎo chē</b> 跑车 sports car
<b>kǎ chē</b> 卡车 truck	<b>sān lún chē</b> 三轮车 tricycle	<b>zì xíng chē</b> 自行车 bicycle

Many visitors to China hope to visit the ancient city Xian because they want to see the famous Terra Cotta Warriors there. Let's follow Jack's example to learn how to ask about traveling from Beijing to Xian.

Listen to **New Words 2** on the audio. Next read along, then repeat each word during the pause provided. When you finish **New Words 2**, listen to **Dialog 2**, and then follow along to practice speaking these sentences yourself.



Jack: Can you please tell me how I can get to Xian from Beijing?

**Qǐng wèn, cóng běi jīng dào xī ān zěn me zǒu?**

请问，从北京到西安怎么走？

Lily: You can take the train.

**Nǐ kě yǐ zuò huǒ chē.**

你可以坐火车。

Jack: How many hours will it take by train?

**Zuò huǒ chē yào duō cháng shí jiān?**

坐火车要多长时间?

Lily: It's about six hours.

**Liù gè xiǎo shí zuǒ yòu.**

六个小时左右。

Jack: How about by plane?

**Zuò fēi jī ne?**

坐飞机呢?

Lily: It takes one hour and fifty minutes.

**Yī gè xiǎo shí wǔ shí fēn zhōng.**

一个小时五十分钟。

Jack: Is there a long distance bus?

**Yǒu cháng tú qì chē ma?**

有 长 途汽车 吗?

Lily: Yes. That takes ten hours from Beijing to Xian.

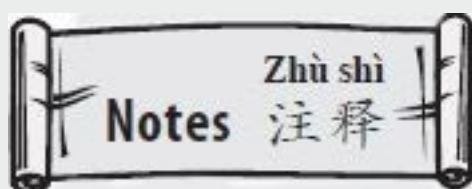
**Yǒu. Shí gè xiǎo shí cái néng dào xī ān.**

有。十 个 小 时 才 能 到 西 安。



从 cóng	from
西安 xī ān	Xian
火车 huǒ chē	train
多长 duō cháng	how long

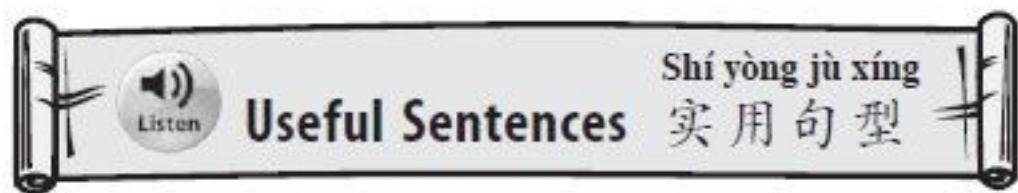
小时 xiǎo shí	hour
左右 zuǒ yòu	about
飞机 fēi jī	airplane
分钟 fēn zhōng	minute
长途 cháng tú	long distance
长途车汽 cháng tú qì chē	long distance bus
才能 cái néng	can



- ① 左 **Zuǒ** and 右 **yòu** normally describe a direction. **Zuǒ** indicates “left” and **yòu** indicates “right.” But when these two words 左 **zuǒ** and 右 **yòu** are put together, they form a new unit, 左右 **zuǒ yòu**, which means “about/maybe.” Remember that this unit is used to describe a rough estimation, instead of a direction. Practice saying Lily’s answer: “六个小时左右 **Liù gè xiǎo shí zuǒ yòu** (It’s about six hours).”
- ② Again I want to remind you to pay attention to your tone. The word 左 **zuǒ** (pronounced with the third tone) means “left,” and the word 坐 **zuò** (pronounced with the fourth tone) means “sit/ by/take.”



tone) means “sit/ by/take.”



Do you want to visit Xian, or any other places? These sentences are indeed useful for doing that.

**Cóng běi jīng dào xī ān zěn me zǒu?**

从北京到西安怎么走?

(How can I get to Xian from Beijing?)

---

**Nǐ kě yǐ zuò fēi jī.**

你可以坐飞机。

(You can take a plane.)

---

**Yě kě yǐ zuò huǒ chē.**

也可以坐火车。

(You also can take a train.)

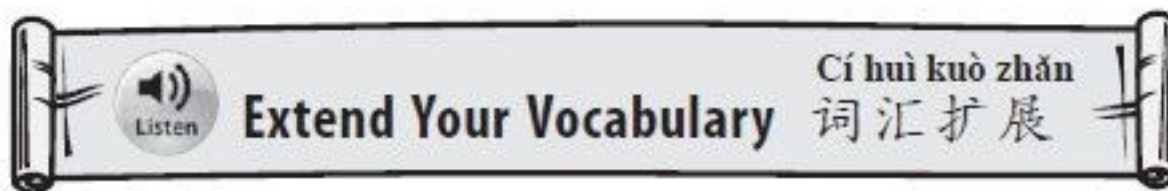
---

**Yào duō cháng shí jiān?**

要多长时间?

(How long will it take?)

---



Try grouping these together into pairs as you practice them, to make their meanings easier to memorize.

<b>duō shǎo</b> 多少 how much	<b>duō dà</b> 多大 how big	<b>duō xiǎo</b> 多小 how small	<b>duō hǎo</b> 多好 how good
<b>duō yuǎn</b> 多远 how far	<b>duō jìn</b> 多近 how close	<b>duō cháng</b> 多长 how long	<b>duō duǎn</b> 多短 how short



Let's check your understanding of what you have learned so far. Work through the following exercises. When you finish, compare your work with the [Answer Key](#) in the back of the book.

Tì huàn liàn xí



## A. Substitutions 替换练习

This is where you practice how to use the words in the section Extend Your Vocabulary. The sentences on the left are basic sentences which are followed by a few extended sentences (on the right) containing the words we looked at in Extend Your Vocabulary and some words you've learned in earlier chapters. Go ahead and give it a try!



Wǒ zuò qì chē dào tiān ān mén.

1. 我坐汽车到天安门。

Yào duō cháng shí jiān?

2. 要多长时间?

Shàng hǎi yǒu hěn duō miàn bāo chē.

• 上海有很多面包车。

Běi jīng de sān lún chē hé kǎ chē yě hěn duō.

• 北京的三轮车和卡车也很多。

Jié kè xǐ huān tā de zì xíng chē.

• 杰克喜欢他的自行车。

Nǐ hái yǒu duō shǎo tiān cái néng huí jiā?

• 你还有多少天才能回家?

Nà lǐ yǒu duō dà?

• 那里有多大?

Tā jiā dào shū diàn yǒu duō yuǎn?

• 他家到书店有多远?

Zhè lǐ dào běi jīng dà xué duō jìn a!

• 这里到北京大学多近啊!

Tā shì yí gè duō hǎo de rén a!

• 她是一个多好的人啊!

Kàn tú fān yì

## B. Translate 看图翻译

Translate the following English transportation methods into pinyin. The first one is done for you as an example.

airplane

fei jī

truck

car

train

bus



## C. Choose the Correct Words

## 选择正确单词

Choose the correct Chinese word to match each of the underlined English words.

Jack took a plane to Shanghai for a conference. He stayed there for three days and found that he likes Shanghai too. When he came back to Beijing, he met his friends Peter and Lisa who were visiting Beijing for a week. Jack rented a car and drove them to the Great Wall, the Forbidden City, and the Summer Palace. Then his friends took a train to Xian.

sān tiān	fēi jī	péng yǒu	cháng chéng	huǒ chē
三天	飞机	朋友	长城	火车
gù gōng	qì chē	yī gè xīng qī	yí hé yuán	
故宫	汽车	一个星期	颐和园	

## D. Practice a Short Dialog 练习简单对话

This short dialog can further help you get familiar with the words you have learned. Imagine the following situation, and pretend

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

yourself to be person X and practice person X's part; and then switch to the part of person Y. If you have a friend to practice with you, that will be great!

X: Could you tell me how long it is from Beijing to Shanghai by plane?

**Qǐng wèn, cóng běi jīng zuò fēi jī dào shàng hǎi yào duō cháng shí jiān?**

请问,从北京坐飞机到上海要多长时间?

Y: It takes one hour and forty minutes.

**Yī gè xiǎo shí sì shí fēn zhōng.**

一个小时四十分钟。

X: How about from Shanghai to Xian?

**Cóng shàng hǎi dào xī ān ne?**

从上海到西安呢?

Y: It takes about two hours.

**Liǎng gè xiǎo shí zuǒ yòu.**

两个小时左右。

Zhōng wén huā xù

**TIPS Chinese Cultural Tips 中文花絮**

**The Two Main Silk Roads: One Wet, One Dry**

Most people are familiar with the Silk Road that started from China's ancient capital Chang An (called Xian today) and passed through Gan Su province and Xin Jiang province to reach India, Egypt, Persia, Arabia and Rome. This pathway was the primary Silk Road and began during the Han Dynasty (206 BCE–220 CE). Along this Silk Road, people used caravans to transport their countries' products and exchanged commodities with each other, such as silk, gold, jade, porcelains, perfumes, jewels, glassware, rare plants, and medicines. During this process different cultures were shared too, which influenced people's music, dancing, arts, architecture, astronomy, and religions. These economical and cultural exchanges reached their highest peak in the Tang Dynasty (618–907). Today, in the Mogao caves in Dun Huang of Gan Su province, you still can see the original colorful Dun Huang frescoes which illustrate the scene of Chinese and foreign caravans trading goods on the Silk Road.

The second "Silk Road" refers to the trading routes on the sea, which were forged by seafarer Zheng He's voyages during the Ming Dynasty. His first sea voyage was in 1405. There were over 27,800 people in Zheng He's fleet, distributed in about 300 wooden ships. From 1405 to 1433, Zheng He's fleet sailed seven times and reached Southeast Asia, South Asia, the Middle East, and the east coast of Africa. There were a lot of trades and exchanges made during these trips, very similar to those of the "on land" version of the Silk Road. As a representative of China, Zheng He gave gifts to the countries they visited, and received presents to bring back to China. He established many successful diplomatic relationships with other countries. These relationships increased cultural exchange,



enhanced communication, and promoted economic development among China and other countries.

These two Silk Roads opened the door of China to the world.

## For Your Enjoyment

In China, transportation technology and infrastructure has developed quickly since the economic reforms of the late twentieth century. Even so, many of the commonly-heard idioms that mention transportation or roads date from long ago. Here are three of them.



四通八达 **Sì tōng bā dá** (an idiom): Roads leading to everywhere.

阳关大道 **Yáng guān dà dào** (an idiom): A broad way/a broad road.

千里迢迢 **Qiān lǐ tiáo tiáo** (an idiom): Thousands of miles away.

The following poem is from the time in China's past when public transportation was by horses and boats. It was written by Li Bai, the famous Tang poet who lived from 701–762. The poem describes a small boat traveling on the Yangzi River from Bai Di city in Si Chuan province to Jiang Ling in Hu Bai province, a 500-kilometer distance in one day. Notice its excellent description

of the scenery along the Yangzi River.



## DEPARTURE FROM BAI DI CHENG

by Li Bai

From Bai Di Cheng in the colorful dawn  
To Jiang Ling by dusk is a thousand li.  
Amid the howling of monkeys on both banks,  
Our light boat speeds past countless hills.

Zǎo fā bái dì chéng

早发白帝城

Lǐ Bái

李白


Zhao	ci	bái	dì	cǎi	yún	jian,
朝	辞	白	帝	彩	云	间，
qian	li	jiang	ling	yi	ri	hai.
千	里	江	陵	一	日	还。
Liǎng	àn	yuán	shēng	tí	bú	zhù,
两	岸	猿	声	啼	不	住，
qing	zhou	yi	guo	wan	chong	shan.
轻	舟	已	过	万	重	山。


## Suggestions

When you need to take a taxi in China, there might be service person in your hotel arranging it for you. However, if you are

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

on the street, you have to be independent and take care of it yourself. That's more fun anyway, right? There are two things you'll want to keep in mind. First, in certain streets of large cities, taxis are not allowed to stop to pick up passengers. For example, in Chang An street—长安街 **cháng ān jiē**—in Beijing, the main street passing through Tian An Men square, taxis are not permitted to stop anywhere along the street. So look for a smaller cross street nearby to find a taxi. Second, always remember to check the distance on the taxi's meter, to make sure that you pay the correct amount for your ride.

 In China, when you take a taxi, when the service person takes your luggage to your hotel room, when you eat in a restaurant...should you tip these service people, or not? Generally speaking, you don't have to give tips in China. These service people are paid salaries by their employers, and so the cost of the taxi ride, the hotel stay, or the meal should cover the service charges. But if you appreciate someone's extraordinary service to you, you can give them a tip. The amount is entirely up to you.

 There were not many cars and freeways in China until the early 21st century. Now, in large cities of China, car ownership is booming, and many people own private cars. Traffic jams are a big problem in large cities like Beijing, Shanghai, and Guangzhou. If you have an important event to attend and need to get on the roads, remember that it will take you longer than what you'd probably estimate in your country. Think like a Chinese city dweller, and leave early to avoid being late.

## Do You Know?

- ❶ What is the Chinese term for the railway used for high speed trains, and how fast do China's high speed trains run?
- ❷ Who was the first Chinese to travel in space? In which year?

## See you later!

The words, dialogs and sentences in this chapter will help you travel around in China. You may not realize that you've learned 40 new words in this chapter. And you've learned a total of—are you ready?—728 Chinese words in these sixteen chapters! You should be proud of yourself.

I really hope that this book has provided you with a blend of language learning and enjoyment.

再见 **Zài jiàn** Goodbye!

# Answer Key 答案 Dá àn

## Chapter 1: Greetings

### Practice and Review

B. 1) B — 我很好 **Wǒ hěn hǎo** (I am fine.) 2) B — 不客气 **Bú kè qì** (You are welcome!)

C. 1) – c), 2) – a), 3) – d), 4) – b).

D. 1) Please come in! — **Qǐng jìn!** 4) I'm fine, how about you? — **Wǒ hěn hǎo, nǐ ne?**  
2) Please sit down! — **Qǐng zuò!** 5) Thank you! — **Xiè xie!**  
3) How are you? — **Nǐ hǎo ma?** 6) You're welcome! — **Bú kè qì!**

### Do You Know?

1. 中国 **Zhōng guó** is the “middle of kingdom” literally; China was traditionally thought to be the country at the “center of civilization.” 美国 **Měi guó** means “beautiful country” literally.

2. The eight ancient capitals of China are:

Beijing — 北京 **běi jīng** (also current capital)

Xian — 西安 **xī ān** (in Shaan Xi province)

Luoyang — 洛阳 **luò yáng** (in He Nan province)

Kaifeng — 开封 **kāi fēng** (in He Nan province)

Hangzhou — 杭州 **háng zhōu** (in Zhe Jiang province)

Anyang — 安阳 **ān yáng** (in He Nan Province)

Nanjing — 南京 **nán jīng** (in Jiang Su province)

Zhengzhou — 郑州 **zhèng zhōu** (in He Nan province)

## Chapter 2: Introducing...

### Practice and Review

B. 1) C — 他是我 (先生) 。 **Tā shì wǒ (xiān shēng).** (He is my husband.)

2) C — 认识你很 (高兴) 。 **Rèn shí nǐ hěn (gāo xìng).** (It's nice to meet you.)

C. 1) What is your name? — **Nǐ jiào shén me míng zī?**

3) This is my husband. — **Tā shì wǒ de xiān shēng.**

2) My name is Tom. — **Wǒ jiào Tom.**

4) This is my daughter. — **Tā shì wǒ de nǚ ér.**

D. Samples:

1) You are my friend. — **Nǐ shì wǒ de péng yǒu.**

3) These are my parents. — **Tā men shì wǒ de fù mǔ.**

2) I am his wife. — **Wǒ shì tā de tài tai.**

4) We are good friends. — **Wǒ men shì hǎo péng yǒu.**

### Do You Know?

1. The most celebrated traditional Chinese holidays in China are:

The Spring Festival — 春节 **chūn jié**

The Dragon Boat Festival — 端午节 **duān wǔ jié**

The Lantern Festival — 元宵节 **yuán xiāo jié**

The Mid-Autumn Festival — 中秋节 **zhōng qiū jié**

The Pure Brightness Day — 清明节 **qīng míng jié**

The Double Ninth Day — 重阳节 **chóng yáng jié**

“The Spring Festival” also is called “Chinese New Year” in western countries. It is the biggest and the most important holiday for Chinese families.

2. In Chinese, people say “银婚 **yín hūn** (the silver anniversary)” for twenty-five years of marriage and “金婚 **jīn hūn** (the gold anniversary)” for fifty years of marriage. Here 婚 **hūn** means “marriage.” Therefore, 银婚 **yín hūn** and 金婚 **jīn hūn** are only used for wedding anniversaries, not for the anniversaries of other things.

## Chapter 3: Getting Together

### Practice and Review

B. 1) – b), 2) – c), 3) – a), 4) – d).

D. Samples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1) He is <u>British</u> . — <b>Tā shì yīng guó rén.</b>         | 3) Are you <u>Canadian</u> ? — <b>Nǐ shì jiā ná dà rén ma?</b> |
| 2) She is not <u>Chinese</u> . — <b>Tā búshì zhōng guó rén.</b> | 4) I am not <u>French</u> . — <b>Wǒ bú shì fǎ guó rén.</b>     |

### Do You Know?

1. Zheng He 郑和 **Zhèng hé** was the first person to sail overseas in Chinese history. In June of 1405 (Ming Dynasty), 郑和 **Zhèng hé** and his fleet left China for Southeast and South Asia on his first voyage. From 1405 to 1433, 郑和 **Zhèng hé** led his fleet on seven voyages to explore Southeast Asia, South Asia, the Middle East and East Africa.
2. In 1847, Rong Hong 容闳 **Róng hóng** went to America to study at Yale University. He was the first Chinese student graduated from Yale University in 1854. He returned to China afterwards.

## Chapter 4: How to Apologize

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



## Practice and Review

- B. 1) C — 我可能会 (迟到) 。 **Wǒ kě néng huì (chí dào)** (I might be late.)  
2) B — (对不起), 我把花瓶打破了。 (**Duì bù qǐ**), **wǒ bǎ huā píng dǎ pò le** (I am so sorry, I broke a vase.)

C. 1) – e), 2) – d), 3) – a), 4) – c), 5) – b).

D. Samples:

- 1) I am sorry, I came late. — **Duì bù qǐ, wǒ lái wǎn le.**      3) He does not have a younger sister. — **Tā méi yǒu mèi mei.**  
2) I have a vase. — **Wǒ yǒu yí gè huā píng.**      4) They have a daughter. — **Tā men yǒu yí gè nǚ er.**

## Do You Know?

1. In ancient China, there were four great inventions. They are:

Compass — 指南针 **zhǐ nán zhēn**

Gunpowder — 火药 **huǒ yào**

Papermaking — 造纸术 **zào zhǐ shù**

Technique of printing — 印刷术 **yìn shuā shù**

2. The four caves are:

The Mogao caves — 莫高窟 **mò gāo kū** (in Dun Huang city, Gan Su province)

The Mai Ji Shan caves — 麦积山石窟 **mài jī shān shí kū** (in Tian Shui city, Gan Su province)

The Long Men caves — 龙门石窟 **lóng mén shí kū** (in Luo Yang city, He Nan province)

The Yun Gang caves — 云冈石窟 **yún gāng shí kū** (in Da Tong city, Shan Xi province)

These four caves are great Chinese cultural sites. For example, the Mogao caves 莫高窟 **mò gāo kū** contain 1,000 years' worth of famous Buddhist frescoes and are

listed among the World Heritage Sites by United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Culture Organization (UNESCO).

## Chapter 5: Saying Thanks

### Practice and Review

B. 1) B — 我很（高兴）认识你。 **Wǒ hěn (gāo xìng) rèn shí nǐ!** (It's nice to meet you!)

2) C — 我很（感谢）你送我回家。 **Wǒ hěn (gǎn xiè) nǐ sòng wǒ huí jiā.**

(Thank you very much for giving me a ride.)

C. 1) – c), 2) – a), 3) – d), 4) – b).

### Do You Know?

1. The four creatures are:

The kylin — 麒麟 **qí lín**

The miraculous tortoise — 灵龟 **líng guī**

The phoenix — 凤凰 **fèng huáng**

The dragon — 龙 **lóng**

2. The twelve symbolic animals are:

Rat — 鼠 **shǔ**

Rabbit — 兔 **tù**

Horse — 马 **mǎ**

Rooster — 鸡 **jī**

Ox — 牛 **niú**

Dragon — 龙 **lóng**

Sheep — 羊 **yáng**

Dog — 狗 **gǒu**

Tiger — 虎 **hǔ**

Snake — 蛇 **shé**

Monkey — 猴 **hóu**

Pig — 猪 **zhū**

These make up the Chinese zodiac.

## Chapter 6: Weather

### Practice and Review

B. 1) – c), 2) – d), 3) – b), 4) – a).

- D. 1) How is the weather tomorrow? — **Míng tiān tiān qì zěn me yàng?**  
2) It will be sunny this afternoon. — **Jīn tiān xià wǔ shì qíng tiān.**  
3) What does the weather forecast say? — **Tiān qì yù bào zěn me shuō?**  
4) There will be a shower tomorrow morning. — **Míng tiān shàng wǔ yǒu xiǎo yǔ.**

## Do You Know?

1. You can go to the zoo in Beijing and in Chengdu (capital city of Sichuan province) to see pandas. In addition, you can go to the Chengdu Research Base of Giant Panda Breeding or the China Conservation and Research Center for the Giant Panda at the Wolong National Nature Reserve of Sichuan province.
2. Chinese use a special kind of paper for calligraphy and painting. It's called Xuan Zhi (宣纸 **xuān zhǐ**) or Xuan paper. It was originally produced in Xuan City of Anhui province. Xuan paper can absorb water very well and is soft with a fine texture, so when ink touches the paper, it can best display calligraphy and painting.

## Chapter 7: Numbers

### Practice and Review

B. Samples:

- 1) This is six. — **Zhè shì liù.**
- 2) That is twenty-one. — **Nà shì èr shí yī.**
- 3) This is not fifty, this is fifty-nine. — **Zhè bú shì wǔ shí, shì wǔ shí jiǔ.**
- 4) That is not a number, that is a Chinese character. — **Nà bú shì shù zì, shì zhōng guó zì.**

## Do You Know?

1. The four famous fictional works are:

Three Kingdoms — 三国演义 **Sān guó yǎn yì** Journey to the West — 西游记 **Xī yóu jì**

Outlaws of the Marsh — 水浒传 Dream of the Red Chamber — 红楼梦

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

**Shuǐ hǔ zhuàn**

**Hóng lóu mèng**

These four books all have English translation editions available!

2. The four famed love stories are:

Meng Jiangnu — 孟姜女 **Mèng jiāng nǚ**

White Snake Biography — 白蛇传 **Bái shé zhuàn**

The Cowherd and the Girl Weaver — 牛郎织女 **Niú láng zhī nǚ**

Liang Shanbo and Zhu Yingtai (The Butterfly Lovers / Liang Zhu) — 梁山伯与祝英台 **Liáng shān bó yǔ zhù yīng tái**

## **Chapter 8: Time and Date**

### **Practice and Review**

- B. 1) What time is it now? — **Xiàn zài jǐ diǎn?**      4) What day is today? — **Jīn tiān shì xīng qī jǐ?**
- 2) I go to work at eight o'clock. — **Wǒ bā diǎn shàng bān.**      5) Today is March 20th. — **Jīn tiān shì sān yuè èr shí hào.**
- 3) When do you have lunch? — **Nǐ jǐ diǎn chī zhōng fàn?**

### **Do You Know?**

1. Ancient Chinese people used the sundial 日晷 **rì guǐ** and the copper kettle clepsydra 铜壶滴漏 **tóng hú dī lòu** to calculate the time.
2. Zhang Heng 张衡 **Zhāng héng** (78–139) was a famous astronomer. He invented the seismograph (in 132) and the armillary sphere. One of the craters on the moon has been named after him.

## **Chapter 9: Making a Phone Call**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

## Practice and Review

B. 1) – b), 2) – d), 3) – c), 4) – a).

C. Samples:

- 1) This is a mobile phone. — **Zhè shì shǒu jī.** 2) This is not a mobile phone. — **Zhè bú shì shǒu jī.**

## Do You Know?

1. These are the two most famous computer companies in China today:

(1) Lenovo Group Limited, 联想集团有限公司 **lián xiǎng jí tuán yǒu xiàn gōng sī** (short name: Lenovo, 联想 **lián xiǎng**) is a multinational computer technology corporation that develops, manufactures, and markets laptop computers, desktop computers, storage drives, servers, workstations, IT management software, etc.

(2) Huawei Technologies Co. Ltd. 华为技术有限公司 **huá wéi jì shù yǒu xiàn gōng sī** (short name: Huawei, 华为 **huá wéi**) is the largest telecommunication and networking supplier in China.

2. Microsoft established its first office in Beijing, in 1992.

## Chapter 10: In a Restaurant

### Practice and Review

B. 1) C — 我想吃（面条）。**Wǒ xiǎng chī (miàn tiáo).** (I want to have noodles.)

2) D — 她想喝（红酒）。**Tā xiǎng hē (hóng jiǔ).** (She wants to drink red wine.)

3) B — 他要一杯（冰水）。**Tā yào yī bēi (bīng shuǐ).** (He wants a glass of ice water.)

C. Samples:

- 1) I want a bottle of beer. — **Wǒ yào yī píng pí** 3) This is your beer. — **Zhè shì**

**jiǔ.**

**nǐ de pí jiǔ.**

2) Do you have chicken fried rice? — Nǐ men yǒu jī chǎo miàn ma?

## Do You Know?

1. The eight main Chinese cuisine styles are:

Shan Dong cuisine — 山东菜 **shān dōng cài**      Zhe Jiang cuisine — 浙江菜 **zhè jiāng cài**

Si Chuan cuisine — 四川菜 **sì chuān cài**      Fu Jian cuisine — 福建菜 **fú jiàn cài**

Guang Dong cuisine — 广东菜 **guǎng dōng cài**      Hu Nan cuisine — 湖南菜 **hú nán cài**

Jiang Su cuisine — 江苏菜 **jiāng sū cài**      An Hui cuisine — 安徽菜 **ān huī cài**

Each Chinese cuisine has its unique style depending on the local culture, weather, geographic location, and people's cooking methods. Basically, Si Chuan cuisine and Hu Nan cuisine are spicy; Guang Dong cuisine and Fu Jian cuisine are a little bit sweet; Shan Dong cuisine has more garlic and green onion; An Hui cuisine has more soy sauce and a heavier taste; and Jiang Su cuisine and Zhe Jiang cuisine are more light and colorful.

2. The restaurant is called 全聚德烤鸭店 **quán jù dé kǎo yā diàn**, and it is in Beijing. 全聚德烤鸭店 **Quán jù dé kǎo yā diàn** was established in 1864 in Beijing. The roast duck there is very crunchy outside and tender and juicy inside. The duck bone soup is also very delicious. If you go to Beijing, don't miss Roast Beijing Duck!

## Chapter 11: Tea House

### Practice and Review

B. 1) D — 这是(茶馆)吗? **Zhè shì (chá guǎn) ma?** (Is this a tea house?)

2) B — 我要一杯(冰水)。 **Wǒ yào yī bēi (bīng shuǐ).** (I want a glass of ice water.)

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

3) C — 我喜欢看(京剧)。 **Wǒ xǐ huān kàn (jīng jù).** (I like to watch Beijing Opera.)

C. 1) Is this a tea house? — **Zhè shì chá guǎn ma?**

2) Do you like tea or coffee? — **Nǐ xǐ huān chá hái shì kā fēi?**

3) I like to watch Beijing Opera and Gong Fu. — **Wǒ xǐ huān kàn jīng jù hé gōng fū.**

4) We like to see the tea ceremony performances. — **Wǒ mén xǐ huān kàn chá yì biǎo yǎn.**

## Do You Know?

1. The most popular Chinese green teas are 洞庭碧螺春 **dòng tíng bì luó chūn**, 西湖龙井 **xī hú lóng jǐng**, 黄山毛峰 **huáng shān máo fēng**, 都匀毛尖 **dōu yún máo jiān**, 信阳毛尖 **xìn yáng máo jiān**, 六安瓜片 **liù ān guā piàn**, and 铁观音 **tiě guān yīn**.

2. The best-known red tea is 祁门红茶 **qí mén hóng chá**.

## Chapter 12: Where to Go

### Practice and Review

- B. 3) (1) My home is at the southeast side of the post office.  
**Wǒ de jiā zài yóu jú de (dōng nán biān).**
- (2) His daughter's school is on the west side of Tian Tan park.  
**Tā nǚ er de xué xiào zài tián tán gōng yuán (xī biān).**
- (3) That tea house is at the northwest side of the big hotel.  
**Nà ge chá guǎn zài dà lǚ guǎn de (xī běi biān).**
- (4) This restaurant is at the east side of the Forbidden City.  
**Zhè jiā cǎn guǎn zài gù gōng de (dōng biān).**

C. 1) Where is the bathroom? — **Cè suǒ (or xǐ shǒu jiān, wèi shēng jiān) zài nǎ lǐ?**



- 2) How can I get to the book store? — **Qù shū diàn zěn me zǒu?**  
 3) Where is Beijing Hospital? — **Běi jīng yī yuàn zài nǎ lǐ?**  
 4) How can I get to the National Stadium? — **Qù guó jiā tǐ yù chǎng zěn me zǒu?**

## Do You Know?

1. There are four mountains famous for being sacred in Buddhism. They are:

五台山 **wǔ tái shān** in Wu Tai county of Shan Xi province

普陀山 **pǔ tuó shān** in Zhou Shan islands of Zhe Jiang province

峨眉山 **é méi shān** in E Mei county of Si Chuan province

九华山 **jiǔ huá shān** in Qing Yang county of An Hui province

2. There are four mountains famous for being sacred in Taoism. They are:

龙虎山 **lóng hǔ shān** in Jiang Xi province

齐云山 **qí yún shān** in An Hui province

武当山 **wǔ dāng shān** in Hu Bei province

青城山 **qīng chéng shān** in Si Chuan province

## Chapter 13: Sightseeing

### Practice and Review

- C. Beijing is a beautiful city. 那里有 nà lǐ yǒu a lot of interesting places to go.

Jack 去过颐和园 qù guò yí hé yuán and 故宫 gù gōng. He 也去过鸟巢 yě qù guò niǎo cháo.

He 喜欢 xǐ huān all of them.

## Do You Know?

1. There are thousands of hutongs (ancient alleys) in Beijing. Most of them were built between 1206 and 1911. Some of them are not in good shape now, and others have been remodeled and look different from the original appearance. Today, hutongs in Beijing attract a lot of foreign visitors. Many like to go to these hutongs in order to

see old styles of Beijing: 猫耳胡同 mǎo ěr hú tong, 金鱼胡同 jīn yú hú tong, 东交民巷 dōng jiāo mín xiàng, 西交民巷 xī jiāo mín xiàng, 国子监 guó zǐ jiān, 南锣鼓巷 nán luó gǔ xiàng, and 琉璃场 liú lí chǎng.

2. There were fourteen dynasties in Chinese history. The first one was the Xia Dynasty which ruled from 1994 BCE to 1766 BCE and the last one was the Qing Dynasty which ruled from 1644 CE to 1912 CE. A dynasty is a succession of rulers of the same family.

## Chapter 14: At the Bank

### Practice and Review

B. 1) – d), 2) – a), 3) – b), 4) – c).

### Do You Know?

1. The following banks have been described as the “big four banks” in China:  
Bank of China 中国银行 zhōng guó yín háng  
China Construction Bank 工商银行 gōng shāng yín háng  
Industrial and Commercial Bank of China 建设银行 jiàn shè yín háng  
Agricultural Bank of China 农业银行 nóng yè yín háng
2. In the old days in China, people used small pieces of metal ingot formed into a boat shape with a little oval bump in the middle. These boat-shaped metal pieces were called 元宝 yuán bǎo and were used as money. 元宝 yuán bǎo could be gold or silver and its value depended on its weight.

## Chapter 15: Shopping

### Practice and Review

B. 1) C — 那件(衬衣)怎么卖? Nà jiàn (chèn yī) zěn me mài? (How much is that shirt?)

2) D — 太(贵)了! 便宜点, 好吗? Tài (guì) le! Pián yí diǎn hǎo ma?

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

(That is too expensive! Can you lower the price?)

C. Jack is standing in a farmer's market in Beijing. He bought the things on his list: 西红柿 xī hóng shì, 西兰花 xī lán huā, and 芹菜 qín cài. He also wanted to buy some fruit, so he bought 苹果 píng guǒ, 橙子 chéng zi and 香蕉 xiāng jiāo. He didn't buy 鸡 jī — instead he bought 一条大鱼 yī tiáo dà yú. He spent a total of 五十块 wǔ shí kuài for the food.

## Do You Know?

1. The art of silk embroidery has a history of thousands of years in China. These are four of the most famous styles of this Chinese art form:

Su Zhou embroidery 苏绣 sū xiù      Guang Dong embroidery 粤绣 yuè xiù

Hu Nan embroidery 湘绣 xiāng xiù      Si Chuan embroidery 蜀绣 shǔ xiù

2. The four essential items for doing Chinese calligraphy, 文房四宝 wén fáng sì bǎo, are also called the Four Treasures of the Study. They are: brush, ink stone, ink stick and paper (most people use Xuan paper).

## Chapter 16: Transportation

### Practice and Review

C. Jack took a 飞机 fēi jī to Shanghai for a conference. He stayed there for 三天 sān tiān and found that he likes Shanghai too. When he came back to Beijing, he met his 朋友 péng yǒu Peter and Lisa who were visiting Beijing for 一个星期 yí gè xīng qī. Jack rented a 汽车 qì chē and drove them to 长城 cháng chéng, 故宫 gù gōng, and 颐和园 yí hé yuán. Then his friends took a 火车 huǒ chē to Xian.

## Do You Know?

1. The railway for high-speed trains is called 高速铁路 **gāo sù tiě lù** or 高铁 **gāo tiě** in Chinese. The top speed of the train is 350 km/h, with an average of 310 km/h for the entire trip between the two cities. That's at the present time...of course, transportation technology is always improving!
2. 杨利伟 **Yáng lì wěi** was the first Chinese person in space, in 2003.

# Glossary 词汇总表 Cí huì zǒng biǎo

## A

a/an 一个 yī gè

a cup of 一杯 yī bēi

a little 一点儿 yī diǎn er

a point/a dot/a little 点 diǎn

a pot of 一壶 yī hú

ability/talent 才能 cái néng

about/left and right 左右 zuǒ yòu

accident 车祸 chē huò

account 帐户 zhàng hù

account book 存折 cún zhé

acrobatics 杂技 zá jì

African 非洲人 fēi zhōu rén

afternoon 下午 xià wǔ

again 再 zài

ah (interjection) 啊 a, 呀 ya, 啦 la, 哎呀 ai ya

ahead 前 qián

airplane 飞机 fēi jī

all 都是 dōu shì

also 也 yě

America 美国 měi guó

American 美国人 měi guó rén

and 和 hé

apart from 离开 lí kāi

apology 道歉 dào qiàn

apple 苹果 píng guǒ

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

apple juice 苹果汁 píng guǒ zhī  
appreciate/thanks 感谢 gǎn xiè  
April 四月 sì yuè  
aquarium 水族馆 shuǐ zú guǎn  
architecture 建筑 jiàn zhù  
art gallery 美术馆 měi shù guǎn  
Asian 亚洲人 yà zhōu rén  
aside 旁边 páng biān  
ask 问 wèn/要 yào  
ATM machine 取款机 qǔ kuǎn jī  
attend/join 参加 cān jiā  
August 八月 bā yuè  
Australia 澳大利亚 ào dà lì yà  
Australian 澳大利亚人 ào dà lì yà rén  
(auxiliary word) 得 dé

## B

back 回 huí, 后 hòu  
backward 向后 xiàng hòu  
banana 香蕉 xiāng jiāo  
bank 银行 yín háng  
Bank of America 美国银行 měi guó yín háng  
Bank of China 中国银行 zhōng guó yín háng  
banker 银行家 yín háng jiā  
bathroom/restroom 厕所 cè suǒ, 洗手间 xǐ shǒu jiān, 卫生间 wèi shēng jiān  
beauty 美 měi/美丽 měi lì  
beef 牛肉 niú ròu  
beer 啤酒 pí jiǔ  
behind 后边 hòu biān  
Beihai Park 北海公园 běi hǎi gōng yuán

Beijing 北京 běi jīng  
Beijing Opera 京剧 jīng jù  
beside/next to 旁边 páng biān  
beverage 饮料 yǐn liào  
bicycle 自行车 zì xíng chē  
big 大 dà  
bill 账单 zhàng dān  
Bird's Nest 鸟巢 niǎo cháo  
black 黑色 hēi sè  
blue 蓝色 lán sè  
bookstore 书店 shū diàn  
bottle 瓶 píng  
bowl 碗 wǎn  
break 打破 dǎ pò  
breakfast 早饭 zǎo fàn  
Britain 英国 yīng guó  
British 英国人 yīng guó rén  
broccoli 西蓝花 xī lán huā  
buns 包子 bāo zi  
bus 公共汽车 gōng gòng qì chē  
business card 名片 míng piàn  
Bus No. 1 一路车 yī lù chē  
buy 买 mǎi

## C

can 能 néng  
can/may 可以 kě yǐ  
Canada 加拿大 jiā ná dà  
Canadian 加拿大人 jiā ná dà rén  
Cantonese 广东话 guǎng dōng huà, 粤语 yuè yǔ



car 汽车 qì chē  
car accident 车祸 chē huò  
carrot 胡萝卜 hú luó bo  
celebrate 欢庆 huān qìng  
celery 芹菜 qín cài  
cell phone 手机 shǒu jī  
cent 分 fēn  
Champagne 香槟酒 xiāng bīn jiǔ  
cheap 便宜 pián yi  
check out 结帐 jié zhàng  
chicken 鸡 jī  
chicken chow mein 鸡炒面 jī chǎo miàn  
China 中国 zhōng guó  
Chinese language 中文 zhōng wén, 汉语 hàn yǔ  
Chinese person 中国人 zhōng guó rén  
Chinese style 中国式 zhōng guó shì  
chrysanthemum tea 菊花茶 jú huā chá  
Citibank 花旗银行 huā qí yín háng  
cloudy 阴天 yīn tiān, 多云 duō yún  
coat 外套 wài tào  
Coca-Cola 可口可乐 kě kǒu kě lè  
cocktail 鸡尾酒 jī wěi jiǔ  
coffee 咖啡 kā fēi  
come 来 lái  
come again 再来 zài lái  
come in 进 jìn  
come late 迟到 chí dào, 来晚了 lái wǎn le  
company 公司 gōng sī  
computer 电脑 diàn nǎo  
cookie 点心 diǎn xīn

cooked rice 米饭 mǐ fàn  
correct 没错 méi cuò  
count 数 shǔ, 数一数 shǔ yī shǔ  
count it 一点一点 diǎn yī diǎn, 数一下 shǔ yī xià  
country/nation 国家 guó jiā  
cucumber 黄瓜 huáng guā  
cup 杯子 bēi zi  
current deposit 活期 huó qī  
cut 划破 huá pò

## D

dance 舞蹈 wǔ dǎo  
date 日期 rì qī, 号 hào  
daughter 女儿 nǚ ér  
day 日 rì/天 tiān  
December 十二月 shí èr yuè  
deposit 存钱 cún qián, 存款 cún kuǎn  
desktop computer 台式电脑 tái shì diàn nǎo  
dial 打 dǎ  
dime 一角 yī jiǎo / 一毛 yī máo  
dinner/supper 晚饭 wǎn fàn  
disturb 打扰 dǎ rǎo  
do not have/have not 没有 méi yǒu  
dollar 美元 měi yuán  
don't hurry 别着急 bié zháo jí  
Dongdan 东单 dōng dān  
down 下 xià  
drama 戏剧 xì jù  
drink 喝 hē  
duck 鸭 yā/鸭子 yā zi

dumpling 饺子 jiǎo zi

## E

east 东 dōng

east side 东边 dōng biān

east-west/things 东西 dōng xī

eat 吃 chī

egg drop soup 蛋花汤 dàn huā tāng

eight 八 bā

eleven 十一 shí yī

email 电子邮件 diàn zǐ yóu jiàn

email address 电子邮箱 diàn zǐ yóu xiāng

England/Britain 英国 yīng guó

English/British 英国人 yīng guó rén

enough 足够 zú gòu

euro 欧元 ōu yuán

everybody 每人 měi rén

exchange 换钱 huàn qián

exchange rate 兑换率 duì huàn lǜ

expensive 贵 guì

extremely/too 太 tài

## F

farewell 欢送 huān sòng

father 父亲 fù qīn

fax 电传 diàn chuán

February 二月 èr yuè

fee 费 fèi

fifty cents 五毛 wǔ máo/五角 wǔ jiǎo

first 先 xiān

fish 鱼 yú

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

five 五 wǔ

Forbidden City 故宫 gù gōng

forecast 预报 yù bào

forward 向前 xiàng qián

four 四 sì

Fragrant Hills Park 香山公园 xiāng shān gōng yuán

France 法国 fǎ guó

French 法国人 fǎ guó rén

Friday 星期五 xīng qī wǔ

friend 朋友 péng yǒu

from 从 cóng

front 前 qián

fruit 水果 shuǐ guǒ

full 饱 bǎo

## G

garden 园林 yuán lín

German 德国人 dé guó rén

Germany 德国 dé guó

get off (e.g., a bus, train) 下车 xià chē

get on (e.g., a bus, train) 上/乘车 shàng/chéng chē

give 给 gěi

glad 高兴 gāo xìng

go/walk 走 zǒu

go home 回家 huí jiā

go straight ahead 一直走 yī zhí zǒu

go to work 上班 shàng bān

Gong Fu 功夫 gōng fū

gongbao chicken 宫保鸡丁 gōng bǎo jī dīng

good 好 hǎo

goodbye 再见 zài jiàn  
Google 谷歌 gǔ gē  
grape 葡萄 pú táo  
grateful/appreciate 非常感谢 fēi cháng gǎn xiè  
great 好极了 hǎo jí le  
Great Wall 长城 cháng chéng  
green 绿色 lǜ sè  
green light 绿灯 lǜ dēng  
green tea 绿茶 lǜ chá  
greeting 问候 wèn hòu  
gray 灰色 huī sè  
gymnasium 体育馆 tǐ yù guǎn

## H

half 半 bàn  
half kilogram 一斤 yī jīn  
hand 手 shǒu  
have been to 去过 qù guò  
have not/do not have 没有 méi yǒu  
have/has 有 yǒu  
he 他 tā  
heaven day 星期天 xīng qī tiān  
heavy rain 大雨 dà yǔ  
heavy snow 大雪 dà xuě  
hello 你好 nǐ hǎo  
hello (on phone) 喂 wéi  
here you are 给你 gěi nǐ  
hold/take 把 bǎ  
home 家 jiā  
honor 荣幸 róng xìng

hospital 医院 yī yuàn  
hotel 旅馆 lǚ guǎn  
hour 小时 xiǎo shí  
how 怎么 zěn me  
how about 怎么样 zěn me yàng  
how big 多大 duō dà  
how far 多远 duō yuǎn  
how good 多好 duō hǎo  
how long 多长 duō cháng  
how many/few 几 jǐ  
how many people 几位 jǐ wèi  
how much/how many 多少 duō shǎo  
how close 多近 duō jìn  
how short 多短 duō duǎn  
how small 多小 duō xiǎo  
how to say 怎么说 zěn me shuō  
how to read 怎么读 zěn me dú  
how to teach 怎么教 zěn me jiāo  
how to write 怎么写 zěn me xiě  
huge 真大 zhēn dà  
hundred 百 bǎi  
hurricane 飓风 jù fēng  
husband 先生 xiān shēng, 丈夫 zhàng fu, 老公 lǎo gōng

I

I 我 wǒ  
ice water 冰水 bīng shuǐ  
India 印度 yìn dù  
Indian 印度人 yìn dù rén  
indoor swimming pool 游泳馆 yóu yǒng guǎn

interest 利息 lì xī  
internet 互联网 hù lián wǎng  
internet surfing 上网 shàng wǎng  
[interrogative particle] 吗 ma  
[interrogative particle] 呢 ne  
intersection 十字路口 shí zì lù kǒu  
introduce 介绍 jiè shào  
is not/are not 不是 bú shì  
is/are 是 shì  
it 它 tā  
Italy 意大利 yì dà lì

## J

Jack 杰克 jié kè  
jacket 夹克 jiá kè  
January 一月 yī yuè  
Japan 日本 rì běn  
Japanese 日本人 rì běn rén  
jasmine tea 茉莉花茶 mò lì huā chá  
Jingshan Park 景山公园 jǐng shān gōng yuán  
joint venture 合资 hé zī  
juice 果汁 guǒ zhī  
July 七月 qī yuè  
June 六月 liù yuè

## L

lamb 羊肉 yáng ròu  
laptop computer 手提电脑 shǒu tí diàn nǎo  
Lao She 老舍 lǎo shě  
Lee/Li 李 lǐ  
left 左 zuǒ

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*



left and right/about 左右 zuǒ yòu  
lettuce 生菜 shēng cài  
Li Ming 李明 lǐ míng  
library 图书馆 tú shū guǎn  
lightning 闪电 shǎn diàn  
like 喜欢 xǐ huān  
Lily 丽丽 lì lì  
Lingzi 玲子 líng zǐ  
liquor 白酒 bái jiǔ  
listen 听 tīng  
live 住 zhù  
long term 长期 cháng qī  
long time 好久 hǎo jiǔ  
long-distance 长途 cháng tú  
long-distance bus 长途汽车 cháng tú qì chē  
long-distance call 长途电话 cháng tú diàn huà  
Longjing tea 龙井茶 lóng jǐng chá  
look around 逛 guàng  
look at 看 kàn  
look for/seek 找 zhǎo  
look like 像 xiàng  
lunch 中饭 zhōng fàn

## M

make a phone call 打电话 dǎ diàn huà  
Mandarin 普通话 pǔ tōng huà  
many 许多 xǔ duō  
Mao Mao (name) 毛毛 máo mao  
March 三月 sān yuè  
Mary 玛丽 mǎ lì

maybe/possible 可能 kě néng

May 五月 wǔ yuè

may/can 可以 kě yǐ

[measure word] 个 gè

meat 肉 ròu

medium rain 中雨 zhōng yǔ

meet/know/recognize 认识 rèn shí

menu 菜单 cài dān

Microsoft 微软 wēi ruǎn

milk 牛奶 niú nǎi

million 百万 bǎi wàn

Ming Tombs 十三陵 shí sān líng

minute 分钟 fēn zhōng

mobile phone 手机 shǒu jī

modern 现代 xiàn dài

Monday 星期一 xīng qī yī

money 钱 qián

month 月 yuè

more/many/much 多 duō

morning 上午 shàng wǔ

mother/mom 母亲 mǔ qīn/妈妈 mā ma

Mr./Sir 先生 xiān shēng

museum 博物馆 bó wù guǎn

mushrooms with tender greens 香菇菜心 xiāng gū cài xīn

music 音乐 yīn yuè

my 我的 wǒ de

N

name 名字 míng zi

namely 就是 jiù shì

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - www.ebook-converter.com\*\*\*\*\*

National Grand Theater 国家大剧院 guó jiā dà jù yuàn

never mind 没关系 méi guān xi

New Zealand 新西兰 xīn xī lán

night 夜里 yè lǐ

night view 夜景 yè jǐng

nine 九 jiǔ

nineteen 十九 shí jiǔ

ninety 九十 jiǔ shí

no problem 没问题 méi wèn tí

no, not 不 bú/bù

noodle 面条 miàn tiáo

normal 平常 píng cháng

north 北 běi

northeast 东北 dōng běi

north side 北边 běi biān

north-south 南北 nán běi

northwest 西北 xī běi

not far 不远 bù yuǎn

not at all 没什么 méi shén me

November 十一月 shí yī yuè

now 现在 xiàn zài

number 数字 shù zì, 号码 hào mǎ

## O

October 十月 shí yuè

often 经常 jīng cháng

okay 好的 hǎo de

on the road 路上 lù shàng

one 一 yī

one hundred 一百 yī bǎi

one hundred twenty-five 一百二十五 yī bǎi èr shí wǔ

one hundred million 一亿 yī yì

one hundred thousand 十万 shí wàn

one thousand 一千 yī qiān

one thousand three hundred sixty-eight 一千三百六十八 yī qiān sān bǎi liù shí bā

oolong tea 乌龙茶 wū lóng chá

open 开 kāi

opera 歌剧 gē jù

or 或者 huò zhě

orange 橙子 chéng zǐ

orange color 橙色 chéng sè

orange juice 橙汁 chéng zhī

order (a dish) 点菜 diǎn cài

organic tea 有机茶 yǒu jī chá

over/extremely/too 太 tài

## P

pack 打包 dǎ bāo

pants 裤子 kù zi

parents 父母 fù mǔ

park 公园 gōng yuán

[particle] 了 le

party 聚会 jù huì

pay bill 买单 mǎi dān, 付钱 fù qián, 结帐 jié zhàng

payphone 公用电话 gōng yòng diàn huà

pedicab/tricycle 三轮车 sān lún chē

People's Bank of China 中国人民银行 zhōng guó rén mín yín háng

performance 表演 biǎo yǎn

Peter 彼得 bǐ dé

photo ID 证件 zhèng jiàn

physical exercise 体育 tǐ yù

pine nuts and sweet corn 松仁玉米 sōng rén yù mǐ

place 地方 dì fāng

please 请 qǐng

please listen 请听 qǐng tīng

please look 请看 qǐng kàn

please read 请读 qǐng dú

please speak 请说 qǐng shuō

pork 猪肉 zhū ròu

post office 邮局 yóu jú

pound 英镑 yīng bàng

presence/come 光临 guāng lín

problem 问题 wèn tí

program 节目单 jié mù dān

Pu'er tea 普洱茶 pǔ ěr chá

public 公共 gōng gòng

purple 紫色 zǐ sè

## Q

Qing Dao 青岛 qīng dǎo

quarter 刻 kè

## R

rain 下雨 xià yǔ

rate 利率 lì lǜ

real 真的 zhēn de

red color 红色 hóng sè

red light 红灯 hóng dēng

red tea 红茶 hóng chá

red wine 红酒 hóng jiǔ/红葡萄酒 hóng pú táo jiǔ

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

restaurant 餐馆 cān guǎn  
return to Shanghai 回上海 huí shàng hǎi  
return to the U.S. 回美国 huí měi guó  
rice 米 mǐ / 米饭 mǐ fàn  
rice (cooked) 米饭 mǐ fàn  
right 右 yòu  
RMB currency 人民币 rén mín bì  
road 路 lù  
roast Beijing duck 北京烤鸭 běi jīng kǎo yā

## S

Saturday 星期六 xīng qī liù  
say/speak 说 shuō  
scenery 风景 fēng jǐng  
school 学校 xué xiào  
seafood 海鲜 hǎi xiān  
see 见 jiàn  
see/watch/look at 看 kàn  
see you 再会 zài huì  
see you/goodbye 再见 zài jiàn  
sell 卖 mài  
send 送 sòng  
send text message 发短信 fā duǎn xìn  
September 九月 jiǔ yuè  
service fee 手续费 shǒu xù fèi  
seven 七 qī  
she 她 tā  
shirt 衬衣 chèn yī  
shoes 鞋子 xié zi  
shopping 购物 gòu wù

short term 短期 duǎn qī  
shower 阵雨 zhèn yǔ  
shredded beef 牛肉丝 niú ròu sī  
shredded pork with garlic sauce 鱼香肉丝 yú xiāng ròu sī  
shrimp 虾 xiā  
shrimp fried rice 虾炒饭 xiā chǎo fàn  
Silk Street 秀水街 xiù shuǐ jiē  
singing 唱歌 chàng gē  
sit/take 坐 zuò  
six 六 liù  
six o'clock 六点 liù diǎn  
six fifteen 六点一刻 liù diǎn yī kè  
six-oh-five (6:05) 六点五分 liù diǎn wǔ fēn  
six forty-five 六点四十五 liù diǎn sì shí wǔ/六点三刻 liù diǎn sān kè  
six thirty 六点三十 liù diǎn sān shí  
skirt 裙子 qún zi  
Skype 网络电话 wǎng luò diàn huà  
slow 慢 màn  
slowly taste/take time 慢用 màn yòng  
smart phone 智能手机 zhì néng shǒu jī  
SMS 短信 duǎn xìn  
snack 点心 diǎn xīn  
snow 下雪 xià xuě  
snow, light 小雪 xiǎo xuě  
socks 袜子 wà zi  
son 儿子 ér zi  
sorry 对不起 duì bù qǐ, 抱歉 bào qiàn  
sorry/embarrassed 不好意思 bù hǎo yì si  
soup 汤 tāng  
sour 酸 suān



south 南 nán  
southeast 东南 dōng nán  
south side 南边 nán biān  
special/especially 特别 tè bié  
spinach 菠菜 bō cài  
spicy/hot 辣 là  
sports car 跑车 pǎo chē  
stadium 体育场 tǐ yù chǎng  
steamed fish 清蒸鱼 qīng zhēng yú  
stewed eggplant with brown sauce 红烧茄子 hóng shāo qié zi  
still have/also have 还有 hái yǒu  
stir fried bean curd in spicy sauce 麻婆豆腐 má pó dòu fǔ  
stop 停 tíng  
storm 暴风雨 bào fēng yǔ  
straight 一直 yī zhí  
strawberry 草莓 cǎo méi  
style 风格 fēng gé  
subway 地铁 dì tiě  
suit 西装 xī zhuāng  
Summer Palace 颐和园 yí hé yuán  
Sunday 星期日 xīng qī rì, 星期天 xīng qī tiān  
sunny 晴天 qíng tiān  
supper/dinner 晚饭 wǎn fàn  
sweater 毛衣 máo yī  
sweet 甜 tián

## T

taxi 出租车 chū zū chē  
tea 茶 chá  
tea ceremony 茶艺 chá yì

teach 教 jiāo

telephone 电话 diàn huà

tell 告诉 gào sù

Temple of Heaven 天坛公园 tiān tán gōng yuán

ten 十 shí

ten cents 一角 yī jiǎo/一毛 yī máo

ten million 千万 qiān wàn

ten thousand 一万 yī wàn

term deposit 定期 dìng qī

thank you 谢谢 xiè xie, 感谢 gǎn xiè

that 那 nà, 那个 nà gè

that is 那是 nà shì

that is not 那不是 nà bù shì

the day after tomorrow 后天 hòu tiān

the day before yesterday 前天 qián tiān

then 然后 rán hòu

there 哪里 nǎ lǐ, 哪儿 nǎ er

these 这些 zhè xiē

they 他们 tā men, 她们 tā men, 它们 tā men

thirteen 十三 shí sān

thirty-six 三十六 sān shí liù

thirty-seven 三十七 sān shí qī

this 这个 zhè gè

this is 这是 zhè shì

this is not 这不是 zhè bù shì

thousand 千 qiān

three 三 sān

thunderstorm 雷阵雨 léi zhèn yǔ

Thursday 星期四 xīng qī sì

Tian An Men 天安门 tiān ān mén

"\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*"

time 时间 shí jiān, 时候 shí hòu  
to be called 叫 jiào  
to get to/arrive 到 dào  
to go to 去 qù  
today 今天 jīn tiān  
tomato 西红柿 xī hóng shì  
tomorrow 明天 míng tiān  
too/also 也 yě  
too/extremely/over 太 tài  
total 一共 yī gòng  
toward 往 wǎng  
traffic jam 堵车 dǔ chē, 塞车 sāi chē  
train 火车 huǒ chē  
transportation 交通 jiāo tōng  
tricycle 三轮车 sān lún chē  
truck 卡车 kǎ chē  
try 试试 shì shi  
Tuesday 星期二 xīng qī èr  
turn 转 zhuǎn  
turn left 左转 zuǒ zhuǎn  
turn right 右转 yòu zhuǎn  
twelve 十二 shí èr  
twenty 二十 èr shí  
twenty-nine 二十九 èr shí jiǔ  
twenty-one 二十一 èr shí yī  
twenty-two 二十二 èr shí èr  
two 二 èr  
two 两 liǎng

U

unique style 特色 tè sè

university 大学 dà xué

up/on 上 shàng

use 用 yòng

## V

van 面包车 miàn bāo chē

vase 花瓶 huā píng

vegetable 蔬菜 shū cài

very 很 hěn/非常 fēi cháng

very good 很好 hěn hǎo

## W

wait 等 děng

wait a moment 等一下 děng yī xià/ 等一等 děng yī děng

waiter/waitress/service person 服务员 fú wù yuán

Wang Hong 王红 wáng hóng

want 要 yào

want to/think 想 xiǎng

Water Cube 水立方 shuǐ lì fāng

we/us 我们 wǒ men

weather 天气 tiān qì

web page 网页 wǎng yè

Wednesday 星期三 xīng qī sān

week 星期 xīng qī

welcome 欢迎 huān yíng

west 西 xī

west side 西边 xī biān

what 什么 shén me

what time 几点 jǐ diǎn

where 哪里 nǎ lǐ, 哪儿 nǎ er

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com)\*\*\*\*\*

white 白色 **bái sè**  
white tea 白茶 **bái chá**  
white wine 白葡萄酒 **bái pú táo jiǔ**  
who/whom 谁 **shuí**  
why 为什么 **wèi shén me**  
wife 妻子 **qī zi**, 太太 **tài tài**, 老婆 **lǎo pó**  
will 会 **huì**  
wind 风 **fēng**  
withdraw 取 **qǔ**  
withdraw money 取款 **qǔ kuǎn**, 取 钱 **qǔ qián**  
wonderful 太好了 **tài hǎo le**  
wonton 馄饨 **hún tún**  
work 工作 **gōng zuō**  
wow 哇 **wa**  
wrong 错 **cuò**

## **X**

Xian 西安 **xī ān**  
Xiao Li 小李 **xiǎo lǐ**  
Xiao Wang 小王 **xiǎo wáng**  
Xiao Yuan (first name) 小源 **xiǎo yuán**  
Xiao Zhou 小周 **xiǎo zhōu**  
Xu Bin (name) 许斌 **xǔ bīn**

## **Y**

Yahoo 雅虎 **yǎ hǔ**  
year 年 **nián**  
yellow 黄色 **huáng sè**  
yellow light 黄灯 **huáng dēng**  
yesterday 昨天 **zuó tiān**  
you 你 **nǐ**, 您 **nín**, 你们 **nǐ men**, 您 们 **nín men**

\*\*\*\*\* DEMO - [www.ebook-converter.com](http://www.ebook-converter.com) \*\*\*\*\*

you're welcome 不用谢 bú yòng xiè, 不客气 bú kè qì

your 你的 nǐ de

yuan 块 kuài/元 yuán

## **Z**

Zhang (surname) 张 zhāng

# Audio File List



*To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).*

## **Part One: Pinyin**

- 1 Initials
- 2 Finals
- 3 Tones
- 4 Practice Pinyin
- 5 More Practice

## **Part Two: Daily Communication**

### **Chapter 1: Greetings**

- 6 New Words 1
- 7 Dialog 1
- 8 Useful Sentences
- 9 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 10 New Words 2
- 11 Dialog 2
- 12 Useful Sentences
- 13 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 14 Substitutions
- 15 Idioms & Proverbs
- 16 Poem

### **Chapter 2: Introducing...**

- 17 New Words 1
- 18 Dialog 1
- 19 Useful Sentences
- 20 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 21 New Words 2
- 22 Dialog 2
- 23 Useful Sentences

- 24 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 25 Substitutions
- 26 Idioms & Proverbs
- 27 Poem

### **Chapter 3: Getting Together**

- 28 New Words 1
- 29 Dialog 1
- 30 Useful Sentences
- 31 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 32 New Words 2
- 33 Dialog 2
- 34 Useful Sentences
- 35 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 36 Substitutions
- 37 Idioms & Proverbs
- 38 Poem

### **Chapter 4: How to Apologize**

- 39 New Words 1
- 40 Dialog 1
- 41 Useful Sentences
- 42 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 43 New Words 2
- 44 Dialog 2
- 45 Useful Sentences
- 46 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 47 Substitutions
- 48 Idioms & Proverbs
- 49 Poem

### **Chapter 5: Saying Thanks**

- 50 New Words 1
- 51 Dialog 1
- 52 Useful Sentences
- 53 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 54 New Words 2
- 55 Dialog 2
- 56 Useful Sentences
- 57 Extend Your Vocabulary



- 58 Substitutions
- 59 Idioms & Proverbs
- 60 Poem

### **Chapter 6: Weather**

- 61 New Words 1
- 62 Dialog 1
- 63 Useful Sentences
- 64 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 65 New Words 2
- 66 Dialog 2
- 67 Useful Sentences
- 68 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 69 Substitutions
- 70 Idioms & Proverbs
- 71 Poem

### **Chapter 7: Numbers**

- 72 New Words 1
- 73 Dialog 1
- 74 Useful Sentences
- 75 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 76 Practice Numbers
- 77 New Words 2
- 78 Dialog 2
- 79 Useful Sentences
- 80 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 81 Substitutions
- 82 Idioms & Proverbs
- 83 Poem

### **Chapter 8: Time and Date**

- 84 New Words 1
- 85 Dialog 1
- 86 Useful Sentences
- 87 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 88 New Words 2
- 89 Dialog 2
- 90 Useful Sentences
- 91 Extend Your Vocabulary

- 92 Substitutions
- 93 Idioms & Proverbs
- 94 Poem

### **Chapter 9: Making a Phone Call**

- 95 New Words 1
- 96 Dialog 1
- 97 Useful Sentences
- 98 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 99 New Words 2
- 100 Dialog 2
- 101 Useful Sentences
- 102 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 103 Substitutions
- 104 Idioms & Proverbs
- 105 Poem

### **Chapter 10: In a Restaurant**

- 106 New Words 1
- 107 Dialog 1
- 108 Useful Sentences
- 109 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 110 New Words 2
- 111 Dialog 2
- 112 Useful Sentences
- 113 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 114 New Words 3
- 115 Dialog 3
- 116 Useful Sentences
- 117 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 118 Substitutions
- 119 Idioms & Proverbs
- 120 Poem

### **Chapter 11: Tea House**

- 121 New Words 1
- 122 Dialog 1
- 123 Useful Sentences
- 124 Extend Your Vocabulary
- 125 New Words 2

126 Dialog 2  
127 Useful Sentences  
128 Extend Your Vocabulary  
129 Substitutions  
130 Idioms & Proverbs  
131 Poem

## **Chapter 12: Where to Go**

132 New Words 1  
133 Dialog 1  
134 Useful Sentences  
135 Extend Your Vocabulary  
136 New Words 2  
137 Dialog 2  
138 Useful Sentences  
139 Extend Your Vocabulary  
140 Substitutions  
141 Idioms & Proverbs  
142 Poem

## **Chapter 13: Sightseeing**

143 New Words 1  
144 Dialog 1  
145 Useful Sentences  
146 Extend Your Vocabulary  
147 New Words 2  
148 Dialog 2  
149 Useful Sentences  
150 Extend Your Vocabulary  
151 Substitutions  
152 Idioms & Proverbs  
153 Poem

## **Chapter 14: At the Bank**

154 New Words 1  
155 Dialog 1  
156 Useful Sentences  
157 Extend Your Vocabulary  
158 New Words 2  
159 Dialog 2

160 Useful Sentences  
161 Extend Your Vocabulary  
162 New Words 3  
163 Dialog 3  
164 Useful Sentences  
165 Extend Your Vocabulary  
166 Substitutions  
167 Idioms & Proverbs  
168 Poem

### **Chapter 15: Shopping**

169 New Words 1  
170 Dialog 1  
171 Useful Sentences  
172 Extend Your Vocabulary  
173 New Words 2  
174 Dialog 2  
175 Useful Sentences  
176 Extend Your Vocabulary  
177 Substitutions  
178 Idioms & Proverbs  
179 Poem

### **Chapter 16: Transportation**

180 New Words 1  
181 Dialog 1  
182 Useful Sentences  
183 Extend Your Vocabulary  
184 New Words 2  
185 Dialog 2  
186 Useful Sentences  
187 Extend Your Vocabulary  
188 Substitutions  
189 Idioms & Proverbs  
190 Poem



**Yi Ren** taught and did research in Beijing after graduating from Tsinghua University. On moving to the U.S. she began to teach Chinese. At her adult students' urging, Yi decided to offer her dynamic Chinese teaching method via *Chinese for Beginners* to help others learn the language while enjoying it. She lives with her family in Denver, Colorado.



**Xiayuan Liang** practiced medicine in China before coming to the United States. She currently is an associate professor at University of Colorado School of Medicine. In her spare time, Xiayuan likes to read and to discuss interesting topics with friends—in Chinese, of course!

# Appendix 1 附录 1

## Mandarin Chinese Pinyin 汉语拼音

There are 23 initial sounds in Mandarin Chinese:

中国普通话中有二十三个声母:

	Unaspirated bù sòng qì de yīn 不送气的音	Aspirated sòng qì yīn 送气音	Nasal bí yīn 鼻音	Voiceless fricative qīng yīn mó cā yīn 清音摩擦音	Voiced fricative zhuó yīn mó cā yīn 浊音摩擦音
chún yīn Labial 唇音	b	p	m	f	
chǐ cáo yīn Alveolar 齿槽音	d	t	n		l
ruǎn è yīn Velar 软腭音	g	k		h	
shàng è yīn Palatal 上腭音	j	q		x	
chǐ cā yīn Dental sibilant 齿擦音	z	c		s	
Retroflex shé tóu xiàng hòu wān qū 舌头向后弯曲	zh	ch		sh	r
bàn yīn Half voice 半音	y	w			

There are 35 final sounds in Mandarin Chinese:

中国普通话中有三十五个韵母:

simple finals (6) jiǎn dān yùn mǔ 简单韵母	a, e, i, o, u, ü
compound finals (13) fù hé yùn mǔ 复合韵母	ai, ao, ei, ia, iao, ie, iou, ou, ua, uai, üe, uei, uo
nasal finals (16) bí yīn yùn mǔ 鼻音韵母	qián bí yīn front nasals 前鼻音: an, en, ian, in, uan, üan, uen, ün
	hòu bí yīn back nasals 后鼻音: ang, eng, iang, ing, iong, ong, uang, ueng

# Appendix 2 附录 2

## Three Chinese Folk Songs

### 1. Jasmine Flower

Oh, lovely jasmine flower! Oh, lovely jasmine flower!  
No other blooms compete with its fragrance!  
I am tempted to pick one, but I fear that the gardener will scold  
me.

Oh, lovely jasmine flower! Oh, lovely jasmine flower!  
Jasmine's so white, that snow is shy of it.  
I want to pick one, but I fear others might laugh at me.

Oh, lovely jasmine flower! Oh, lovely jasmine flower!  
No other flower can compare to it!  
I want to pick one, but fear it will not bloom next year.



mò lì huā  
茉莉花

hǎo yī duǒ mò lì huā  
好一朵茉莉花，

hǎo yī duǒ mò lì huā  
好一朵茉莉花，

mǎn yuán huā cǎo  
满园花草，

xiāng yě xiāng bú guò tā  
香也香不过它，

wǒ yǒu xīn cǎi yī duǒ dài  
我有心采一朵戴，

yòu pà kàn huā de rén ér yào jiāng wǒ mà  
又怕看花的人儿要将我骂。

hǎo yī duǒ mò lì huā  
好一朵茉莉花，

hǎo yī duǒ mò lì huā  
好 一 朵 茉 莉 花，

mò lì huā kāi  
茉 莉 花 开，

xuě yě bái bú guò tā  
雪 也 白 不 过 它，

wǒ yǒu xīn cái yī duǒ dài  
我 有 心 采 一 朵 戴，

yòu pà páng rén xiào huà  
又 怕 旁 人 笑 话。

hǎo yī duǒ mò lì huā  
好 一 朵 茉 莉 花，

hǎo yī duǒ mò lì huā  
好 一 朵 茉 莉 花，

mǎn yuán huā kāi  
满 园 花 开，

bǐ yě bǐ bú guò tā  
比 也 比 不 过 它，

wǒ yǒu xīn cái yī duǒ dài  
我 有 心 采 一 朵 戴，

yòu pà lái nián bù fā yá  
又 怕 来 年 不 发 芽。

## 2. Kangding Love Song

Above the horse racing hill,  
A white cloud floats perfectly by,  
Just above the serene city. Through it,  
The moon curves above, and its beams shower on Kangding!

The young girl of the Li family is so pretty,  
That it's no wonder that lad of the Zhang family  
Takes a fancy to her. The curving moon above him  
Encourages him in his love for her!

Both because of loving her beauty,  
And regard for her good household management,  
The moon curving above him,  
Makes him regard her good household management!

There are pretty young girls in the world,  
whom I would choose to woo;  
There are handsome young fellows in the world,  
whom you might choose to love.  
Whomever you take a fancy to,  
The moon is curving above!

kāng dìng qíng gē  
康 定 情 歌

pǎo mǎ liū liū de shān shàng yī duǒ liū liū de yún yo  
跑 马 溜 溜 的 山 上， 一 朵 溜 溜 的 云 哟。

duān duān liū liū dì zhào zài kāng dìng liū liū de chéng yo  
端 端 溜 溜 地 照 在， 康 定 溜 溜 的 城 哟。

yuè ér wān wān kāng dìng liū liū de chéng yo  
月 儿 弯 弯， 康 定 溜 溜 的 城 哟。

lǐ jiā liū liū de dà jiě rén cái liū liū de hǎo yo  
李 家 溜 溜 的 大 姐， 人 才 溜 溜 的 好 哟。

zhāng jiā liū liū de dà gē kàn shàng liū liū de tā yo  
张 家 溜 溜 的 大 哥， 看 上 溜 溜 的 她 哟。

yuè ér wān wān kàn shàng liū liū de tā yo  
月 儿 弯 弯， 看 上 溜 溜 的 她 哟。

yī lái liū liū dì kàn shàng rén cái liū liū de hǎo yo  
一 来 溜 溜 地 看 上， 人 才 溜 溜 的 好 哟。

èr lái liū liū dì kàn shàng huì dāng liū liū de jiā yo  
二 来 溜 溜 地 看 上， 会 当 溜 溜 的 家 哟。

yuè ér wān wān huì dāng liū liū de jiā yo  
月 儿 弯 弯， 会 当 溜 溜 的 家 哟。

shì jiān liū liū de nǚ zǐ rèn wǒ liū liū dì qiú yo  
世 间 溜 溜 的 女 子， 任 我 溜 溜 地 求 哟。

shì jiān liū liū de nán zǐ rèn wǒ liū liū dì ài yo  
世 间 溜 溜 的 男 子， 任 我 溜 溜 地 爱 哟。

yuè ér wān wān rèn nǐ liū liū dì ài yo  
月 儿 弯 弯， 任 你 溜 溜 地 爱 哟。

### 3. Beautiful Tai Hu

Beautiful Tai Hu, Beautiful Tai Hu,  
It's beautiful because of the Tai Hu water.  
The white boats lightly skim across the lake,  
The water chestnuts lazily float beneath,  
And green reeds wave and rustle by the banks;  
The fish and shrimp swim through the rippling waves,  
Whose water irrigates the nearby fields—  
Sweet smells of rice and orchard waft around.

Ai Ke Yo

Beautiful Tai Hu, Beautiful Tai Hu!

Beautiful Tai Hu, Beautiful Tai Hu,  
It's beautiful because of the Tai Hu water.  
The red flag gently waves in the soft breeze;  
Spring zephyrs brush the surface of the lake.  
Ah, Tai Hu's water is the harvest wine—  
The lovely, brimming lake's the full jade cup!  
It's full of springtime passion and of love!  
May this land ever boast such lovely springs!

Ai Ke Yo

Beautiful Tai Hu, Beautiful Tai Hu!

tài hú měi  
太 湖 美

tài hú měi ya tài hú měi  
太 湖 美 呀, 太 湖 美,  
měi jiù měi zài tài hú shuǐ  
美 就 美 在 太 湖 水。

shuǐ shàng yǒu bái fān na  
水 上 有 白 帆 哪,  
a shuǐ xià yǒu hóng líng na  
啊, 水 下 有 红 菱 哪,

a shuǐ biān lú wěi qīng  
啊, 水 边 芦 苇 青,  
shuǐ dǐ yú xiā féi  
水 底 鱼 虾 肥。



hú shuǐ zhī chū guàn gài wǎng  
湖 水 织 出 灌 溉 网，  
dào xiāng guǒ xiāng rào hú fēi  
稻 香 果 香 绕 湖 飞。

āi hāi yo  
哎 咳 唷！

tài hú měi ya tài hú měi  
太 湖 美 呀， 太 湖 美！

tài hú měi ya tài hú měi  
太 湖 美 呀， 太 湖 美，  
měi jiù měi zài tài hú shuǐ  
美 就 美 在 太 湖 水。

hóng qí yíng lǜ bō na  
红 旗 迎 绿 波 哪，  
a chūn fēng hú miàn chuī na  
啊， 春 风 湖 面 吹 哪，

a shuǐ shì fēng shōu jiǔ  
啊， 水 是 丰 收 酒，

hú shì bì yù bēi  
湖 是 碧 玉 杯。

chōng mǎn shēn qíng chōng mǎn ài  
充 满 深 情 充 满 爱，  
pěng gěi zǔ guó bào chūn huī  
捧 给 祖 国 报 春 晖。

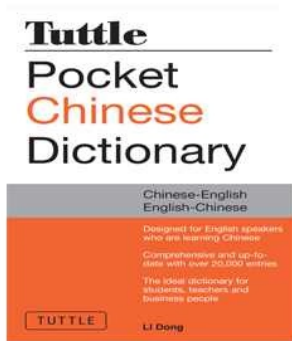
āi hāi yo  
哎 咳 唷！

tài hú měi ya tài hú měi  
太 湖 美 呀， 太 湖 美！

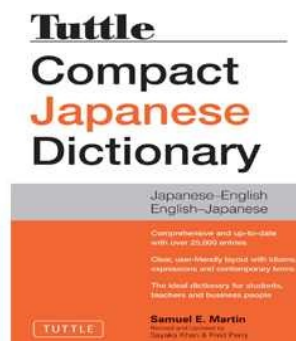




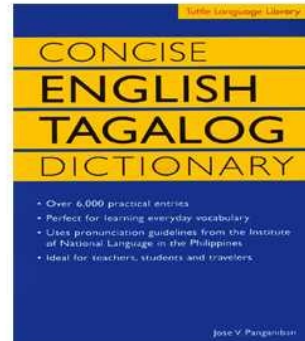
## Other Ebooks Available



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1090-8



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1082-3



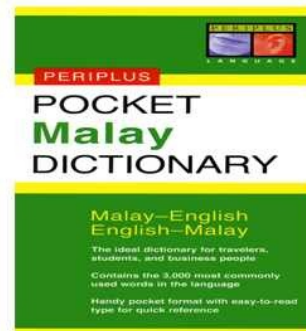
ISBN: 978-1-4629-1128-8



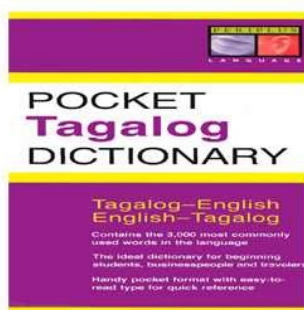
ISBN: 978-1-4629-0969-8



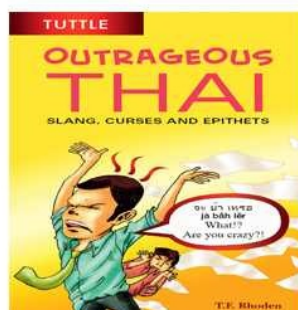
ISBN: 978-1-4629-0981-0



ISBN: 978-1-4629-0982-7



ISBN: 978-1-4629-0983-4



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1031-1



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1057-1





**Praise from beginning Chinese learners:**

"Yi is a **fantastic** teacher. She understands how adult students learn a new language and makes every part of the experience fun! Her enthusiasm is infectious **and her methods work.**" —Sharon Scott

"Immerses you in the great culture of China so you feel as if you are actually **experiencing the language.**" —Jason Hayes

"**Exceptional.** As an adoptive parent to a Chinese child, learning Chinese was very important to me...Yi made learning Mandarin easier." —Rosy Aburto McDonough

**Do you want to learn Chinese, but don't have lots of time?**

If so, this book is for you. Whether it's for your work or travel—or simply to learn about the culture of the world's oldest and largest nation—this book definitely gets you speaking Chinese better and faster than any other.

Chinese is a fascinating language, and this is the book for people who want to learn it the easy way! This user-friendly guide teaches you to speak Chinese by drawing simple parallels with English usage.

- ★ A lighthearted "guide" brings Chinese to life.
- ★ Real-life dialogs and situations help you to converse with confidence.
- ★ The audio's native speakers teach you the correct pronunciation.
- ★ Interesting stories and insider tips introduce you to Chinese culture.

**Chinese for Beginners** is **packed with hundreds of useful hints and tips** drawn from the author's many years of teaching Chinese to foreigners (most of whom are busy people **without lots of time to study!**). "Answer Keys" help you track your progress. "Extend Your Vocabulary" sections help you to learn new words quickly. Insider notes talk about culture, etiquette, and life in China today, creating **a sense of adventure.** The audio recordings allow you to practice the Chinese words and phrases at your own pace, guided by a native Chinese speaker.



**TUTTLE**

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

Printed in Singapore

ISBN 978-1-4629-1476-0



9 781462 914760 US \$18.95

